

Forgotten Books

— www.forgottenbooks.com —

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

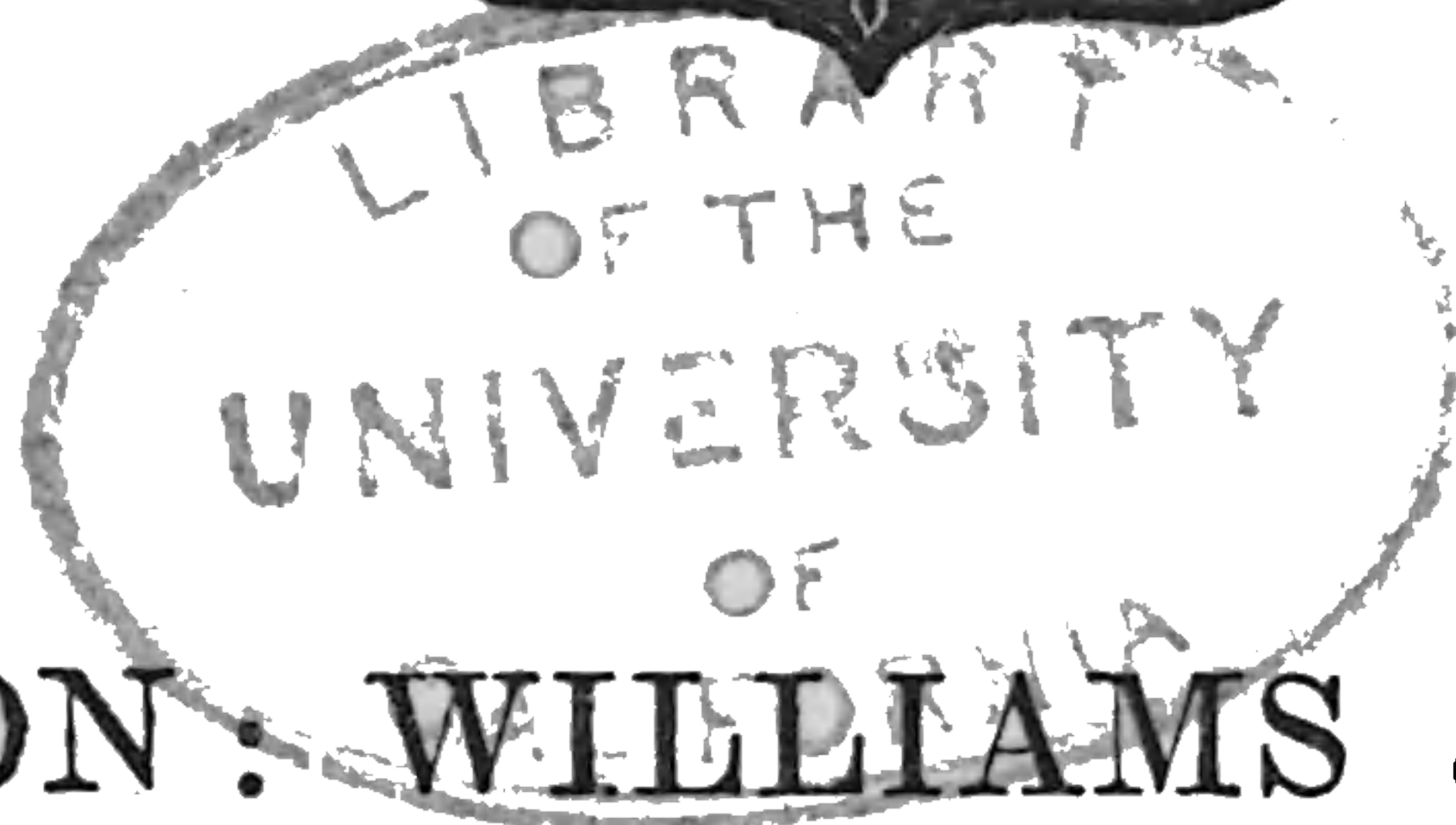
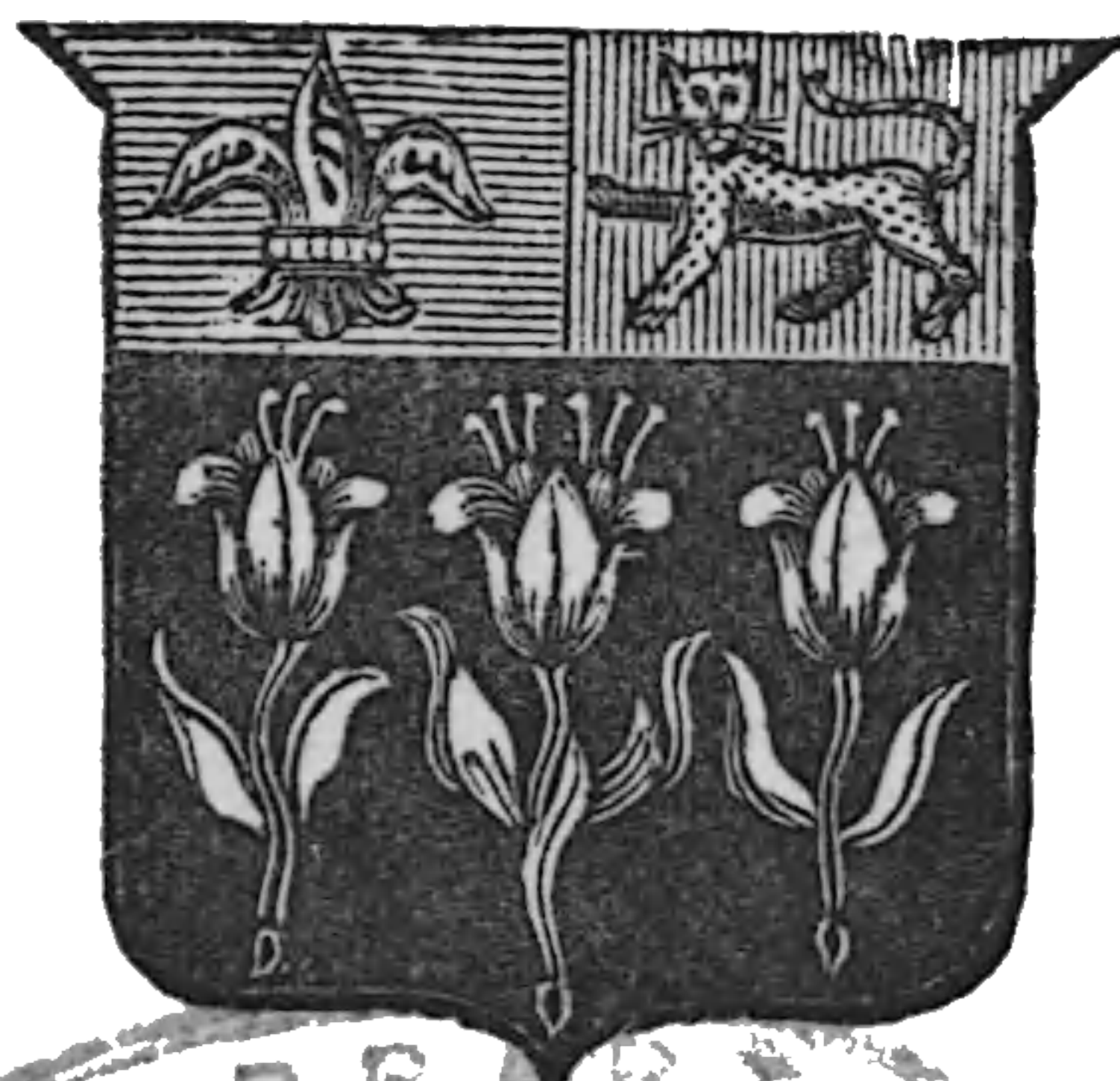
AN INTRODUCTION
TO THE
LATIN TONGUE,
FOR THE USE OF YOUTH.

A NEW EDITION

BY C. D. YONGE, B. A.

AUTHOR OF

“AN ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON,” “YONGE’S GRADUS AD PARNASSUM,”
ETC. ETC.



ETON: WILLIAMS & SON;

LONDON: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND Co.

—
MDCCCLXXIV.

SATHER

PA 2087

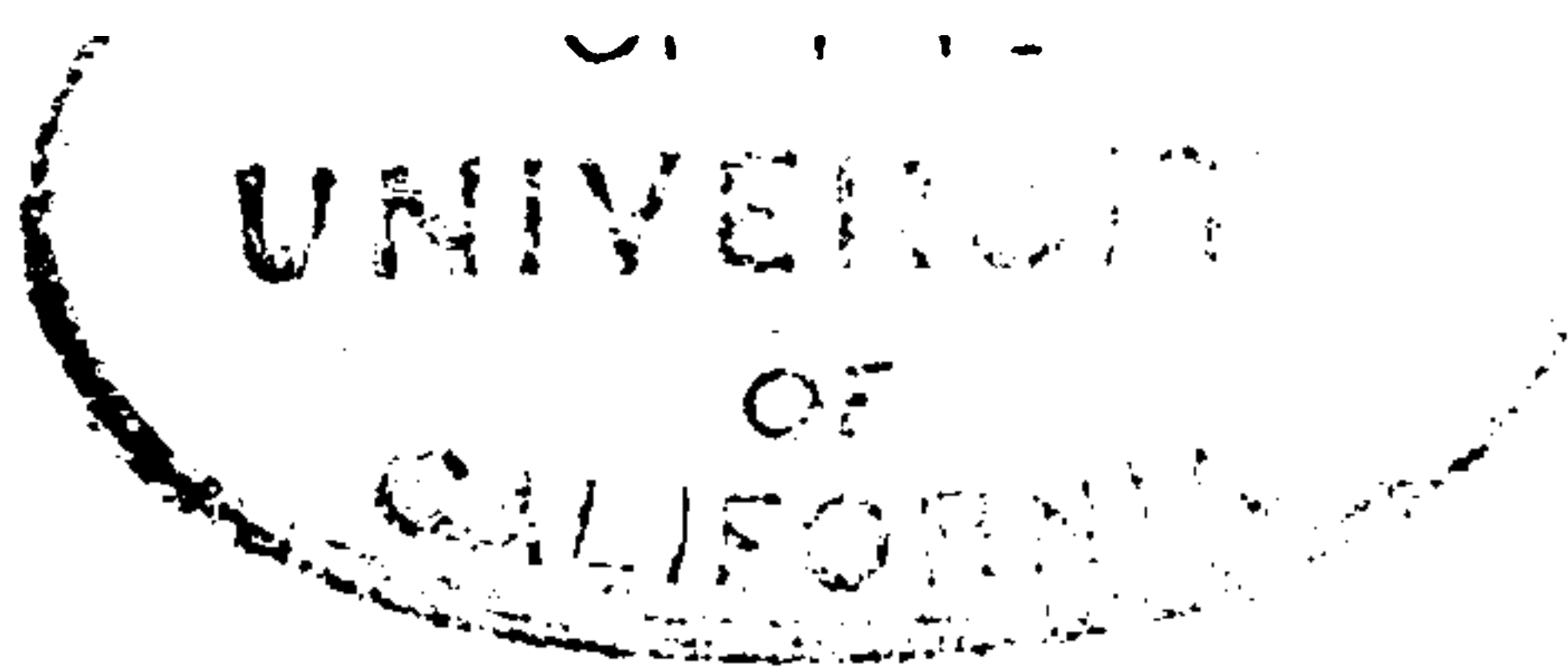
E8

1874

MAIN

INDEX.

	Pag.		Pag.
Alphabet	5	QUÆ GENUS ; or, Nouns Heteroclite	77
Parts of Speech	6	AS IN PRÆSENTI ; or, the Perfect and Supines of Verbs	80
NOUNS—		SYNTAXIS—	
Numbers, Cases, &c.	<i>ib.</i>	Concordantiæ Tres	88
Declension of Substantives	8	Nominum Constructio—	
„ Adjectives	15	Substantiva	92
Comparison of Adjectives	19	Adjectiva	93
Pronouns	21	Præminum Constructio	98
Declension of	22	Verborum Constructio	99
VERBS—		Verba Infinita	107
Voices	24	Gerundia	109
Moods	25	Supina	110
Tenses	26	Verba Impersonalia	<i>ib.</i>
Gerunds and Supines	27	De Tempore	111
Participles	<i>ib.</i>	Spatium Loci	112
Numbers and Persons	28	Nomina Locorum	<i>ib.</i>
The Verb <i>Esse</i>	<i>ib.</i>	Adverbiorum Constructio	113
Declension of Verbs <i>Regular</i>	31	Conjunctionum Constructio	114
Conjugation of ditto—Active	32	De Relativo	118
„ „ Passive	45	Præpositionum Constructio	119
Declension of <i>Irregular</i>		Interjectionum Constructio	121
Verbs	58	PROSODIA	122
Conjugation of ditto	<i>ib.</i>		
<i>Defective</i> Verbs	63	Propria quæ Maribus	
Adverbs	65	construed	132
Conjunctions	<i>ib.</i>	Nouns Heteroclite construed	140
Prepositions	66	As in Præsentii construed	144
Interjections	68	Syntaxis construed	157
The Three Concords	<i>ib.</i>	Prosodia construed	206
PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS ; or, the Genders of Nouns	73		



AN INTRODUCTION

TO THE

L A T I N T O N G U E.

~~~~~

The Latin Letters are thus written :

*Capitals.*

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

*Small, or common.*

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

Of these Letters, six are named *Vowels*; *a, e, i, o, u, y*.  
The rest are called *consonants*.

A *vowel* makes a full and perfect sound of itself, as *e*.

A *consonant* cannot be sounded without a vowel, as *be*.

*Consonants* are divided into liquids, double letters, and mutes.

The *liquids* are *l, m, n, r* : The *double letters* are *j, x, z* :

The remaining letters are called *mutes*.

A *syllable* is a distinct sound of one, or more letters, pronounced in a breath.

A *diphthong* is the sound of two vowels in one syllable.

There are six diphthongs, *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe*.\*

---

\* Besides these six we meet with *ua, ue, ui, uo*, sounded in one syllable, occurring only after the consonants, *g, q, or s*; but they want one distinguishing property of diphthongs, for diphthongs are naturally *long* in quantity, while these are sometimes long and sometimes short. And some consider that in these combinations *u* should be considered a consonant, and written *v*.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech are Seven :  
 Noun, Pronoun, Verb, declined ;  
 Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, unde-  
 clined.

## OF A NOUN.

NOUNS are of two kinds, *Substantives* and *Adjectives*.  
 A *substantive* expresses by itself alone the object of  
 which we are speaking ; as, *hōmo*,\* a man ; *ōrātor*, an  
 orator ; *līber*, the book.

An *adjective* always requires to be joined to a substan-  
 tive, of which it shows the nature or quality ; and is either  
 a common adjective ; as, *bōnus puer*, a good boy ; or a  
*participle* (formed from, and being part of a verb) ; as,  
*fūrens fœmīna*, a woman raging.

## NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have two numbers ; the singular, and the  
 lural.

The singular speaketh but of one ; as *pāter*, a father

The plural speaketh of more than one ; as, *patres*,  
 fathers.

## CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have six cases in each number :

The nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusa-  
 tive, the vocative, and the ablative.

The *nominative* case names the subject of a sentence,  
 and marks the quarter from which an action proceeds ;  
 as, *magister docet*, the master teaches.

The *genitive* case denotes connection between two  
 objects, and in English is commonly translated by "of,"  
 or by 's ; as, *doctrina magistri*, the learning of the  
 master, or the master's learning.

The *dative* case denotes that with reference to which  
 the subject (named by the nominative case) acts ; or in

---

\* A crescent (◌̄) placed over a vowel denotes that the syllable is *short* ;  
 a straight line (◌̄) denotes that it is *long*.

reference to which it possesses this or that quality: and in English it is commonly expressed by the sign “*to*” or “*for*,” pointing out the person to whose advantage or disadvantage the thing spoken of tends; as, *do librum magistro*, I give the book to the master; *patriæ suæ idoneus*, useful to his country.

The *accusative* case expresses the object, whether person or thing, affected by the action spoken of; as, *amo magistrum*, I love the master; *condo domum*, I build a house.

The *vocative* case is used in addressing people or things; as, *O magister*, O master.

The *ablative* case serves to denote the person or thing from whom or from which anything is taken; and also many other relations of substantives, which are expressed in most other languages by prepositions, such as, “*in*,” “*with*,” “*from*,” or “*by*.” Also, the word “*than*” after an adjective of the comparative degree is often a sign of the ablative case; as, *cum magistro*, with the master; *in Italiâ*, in Italy; *vir fortior Cæsare*, a man braver than Cæsar.

#### GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

The **GENDERS** of nouns are three; the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

Some substantives are called *common*, being such as denote an occupation or quality common to both males and females, and admitting adjectives of either the masculine or feminine gender to be joined with them, according as the subject is male or female; as, *meus parens*, or *mea parens*, “my parent,” according as the father or mother is spoken of.

Some are called *epicene*, being such as have only one grammatical gender, which comprehends both sexes; as, *hic passer*, this sparrow; *hæc aquila*, this eagle; without regard to the difference of sex.

Some are called *doubtful*, being such as are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, without regard to the actual sex of the animal spoken of; as, *hic anguis* or *hæc anguis*, this snake.



# DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are FIVE declensions of substantives, distinguished by the ending of the genitive case.

## THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The First declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *æ*, and has the nominative case ending in *ǎ*, of either the masculine or feminine gender ; as, *scrība*, a scribe ; *via*, a way ; or, (in the case of words derived from Greek, being mostly proper names) in *as* or *es* of the masculine, and in *ē* of the feminine gender. These last make the genitive singular to end in *ēs*.

| <i>Singular.</i> |                            |            | <i>Plural.</i> |                            |
|------------------|----------------------------|------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| N.               | Mūs-a, <i>a song,</i>      |            | N.             | Mūs-æ, <i>songs,</i>       |
| G.               | Mūs-æ, <i>of a song,*</i>  |            | G.             | Mūs-ārum, <i>of songs,</i> |
| D.               | Mūs-æ, <i>to a song,</i>   |            | D.             | Mūs-is, <i>to songs,</i>   |
| Acc.             | Mūs-am, <i>a song,</i>     |            | A.             | Mūs-as, <i>songs,</i>      |
| V.               | Mūs-a, <i>o song,</i>      |            | V.             | Mūs-æ, <i>o songs,</i>     |
| Abl.             | Mūs-â, <i>from a song.</i> |            | A.             | Mūs-is, <i>from songs.</i> |
|                  |                            |            |                |                            |
| N.               | Ænēas,                     | Anchīses,  |                | Pēnēlöpē,                  |
| G.               | Ænēæ,                      | Anchīsæ,   |                | Pēnēlöpēs,                 |
| D.               | Ænēæ,                      | Anchīsæ,   |                | Pēnēlöpæ,                  |
| Acc.             | Ænēān,                     | Anchīsēn,  |                | Pēnēlöpēn,                 |
| V.               | Ænēā,                      | Anchīsā, † |                | Pēnēlöpē,                  |
| Abl.             | Ænēâ.                      | Anchīsâ.   |                | Pēnēlöpē.                  |

One or two feminine substantives in *ǎ*, derived from masculines in *us*, make the dat. and abl. plural in *ābus* as well as in *is* ; as, *filia*, a daughter, *filiabus* or *filiis*.

Also feminine proper names ending in *ǎ*, derived from the Greek, are used in Latin (especially by the poets) with either accusative *an* or *am* ; and *an*, when used, follows the quantity of the Greek accusative, so that we find *Maiān*, *Electrān*.

---

\* The Epic Poets occasionally retain the older form, which used to end in *aī* ; as, *Aulāi* in medio, for *Aulæ*. Virg.

† Horace in his Satires uses this vocative case with *ǎ*.

## THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The second declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *i*, and the nominative to end in *ēr* and *īr* of the masculine gender only ; as, *puer*, a boy ; *māgister*, a teacher ; *vir*, a man : in *us*, usually of the masculine gender ; as, *dōmīnus*, a master ; but sometimes of the feminine ; as, *hūmus*, the ground ; or of the neuter, as, *vīrus*,\* poison : in *um* of the neuter gender only ; as, *regnum*, a kingdom : and (in the case of a few proper names derived from the Greek) in *ōs* of the masculine or feminine gender, as, *Dēlōs* ; and in *ōn* of the neuter, as, *Iliōn*.

*Singular.*

N. Puer, a boy,  
G. Puēri, of a boy,  
D. Puēro, to a boy,  
A. Puērum, a boy,  
V. Puer, o boy,  
A. Puēro, by a boy.

*Singular.*

N. Dōmīnus, a master,  
G. Dōmīni, of a master,  
D. Dōmīno, to a master,  
A. Dōmīnum, a master,  
V. Dōmīne, o master,  
A. Dōmīno, by a master.

*Singular.*

N. Māgister, a teacher,  
G. Māgistri, of a teacher,  
D. Māgistro, to a teacher,  
A. Māgistrum, a teacher,  
V. Māgister, o teacher,  
A. Māgistro, by a teacher.

*Plural.*

N. Puēri, boys,  
G. Puērōrum, of boys,  
D. Puēris, to boys,  
A. Puēros, boys,  
V. Puēri, o boys,  
A. Puēris, by boys.

*Plural.*

N. Dōmīni, masters,  
G. Dōmīnōrum, of masters,  
D. Dōmīnis, to masters,  
A. Dōmīnos, masters,  
V. Dōmīni, o masters,  
A. Dōmīnis, by masters.

*Plural.*

N. Māgistri, teachers,  
G. Māgistrōrum, of teachers,  
D. Māgistris, to teachers,  
A. Māgistros, teachers,  
V. Māgistri, o teachers,  
A. Māgistris, by teachers.

\* Nouns of the neuter gender of this declension ending in *us* make the accusative and vocative singular to end in *us*, and have no plural ; except that Lucretius has *Pēlāgē* as the accusative plural of *Pēlāgus*.

*Singular.*

N. Regn-um, *a kingdom,*  
 G. Regn-i, *of a kingdom,*  
 D. Regn-o, *to a kingdom,*  
 A. Regn-um, *a kingdom,*  
 V. Regn-um, *o kingdom,*  
 A. Regn-o, *from a kingdom.*

N. Dělös,  
 G. Dēli,  
 D. Dēlo,  
 A. Dělön,  
 V. Dělě,  
 A. Dēlo.

*Plural.*

N. Regn-a, *kingdoms,*  
 G. Regn-ōrum, *of kingdoms*  
 D. Regn-is, *to kingdoms,*  
 A. Regn-a, *kingdoms,*  
 V. Regn-a, *o kingdoms,*  
 A. Regn-is, *from kingdoms.*

Ииön,  
 Ииi,  
 Ииo,  
 Ииön,  
 Ииön,  
 Ииo.

The genitive case of words ending in *ius* or *ium* was originally *ī*, not *ii*, and *ii* is never used by Virgil or Horace (except in the case of the adjective *ēgrēgii*,) though it occurs occasionally in Ovid.

The vocative of words ending in *us* terminates in *e*, except *Deus*, God, which makes *Deus* in the vocative; and words in *ius*, which make the vocative in *i*; as, *fīlius*, a son, *fīlī*. But proper names derived from the Greek ending in *ius* make the vocative in *e*; as, *Cynthius*, *Cynthie*.

All nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike in both numbers. And all nouns whatever, except those of the first declension ending in *as* or *es*, and those of the second ending in *us* or *ōs*, make the nominative and vocative alike in both numbers.

## THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The third declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *is*, and in the nominative it ends in *e*, *o* (and in words derived from the Greek in *a*, *i*, and *y*,) *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, and *x*, of which those ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *t*, are of the neuter gender only (except *Præneste*, which, as the name of a town, is used also in the feminine.) Those with the other terminations are of various genders, except that those ending in *o*, *ns*, and *x*, are never neuter.

Of nouns of this declension some are *parisyllabic* (that is, they do not increase in the genitive case,) as, *nūbes, nūbis*; some are *imparisyllabic* (that is, they do increase in the genitive case,) as, *lapis, lapīdis*.\* Some

\* In the case of imparisyllabic words, there is a great variety in the manner in which the increase in the genitive case is formed: the following are some of the principal varieties. Words ending in—

*a* make the gen. in *ātis, as poēma, poemātis.*  
*o* *īnis, as virgo, virgīnis.*  
*ōnis, as leo, leōnis.*  
*ōnis, as Măcēdo, Măcēdōnis.*  
*y* *yōs, as Tīphys, Tīphyōs.*  
*c* *ctis, as lac, lactis.*  
*l* *lis, as ānimal, ānīmālis; sal, sālis; mel, mellis.*  
*n* { *ānis, as Tītān, Tītānis.*  
*ēnis, as Sīrēn, Sīrēnis.*  
*īnis, as Delphīn, Delphīnis.*  
*īnis, as carmēn, carmīnis.*  
*ōnis, as Mărăthon, Mărăthōnis.*  
*ōnis, as cănōn, cănōnis.*  
*ontis, as Xenophon, Xenophontis.*

by adding *is, as calcar, calcāris.*  
*jūbar, jubāris.*  
*carcer, carcēris.*  
*ver, vēris.*  
*hōnor, hōnōris.*  
*æquor, æquōris.*  
*fur, fūris.*  
*murmur, murmūris; but far makes farris;*  
*īter, ītīnēris; Jūpīter, Jōvis; cor, cor-*  
*dis; rōbur, rōbōris.*

*as* in *ātis, as pietās, pietātis:*  
 but in words derived from the Greek—  
 in *ādīs, as lampās, lampādīs.*  
*antis, as gīgas, gigantīs.*

We find also *mas, mārīs; vas, vāsīs; vas, vādīs; as, assīs.*

*ēs* in *ītīs, as mīlēs, mīlītīs.*

*ēs* in *ētīs, as sēgēs, sēgētīs.*

We find also *quies, quiētīs; pes, pēdīs; hæres, hærēdīs; Cērēs-*  
*Cērērīs.*

*is* in *ērīs, as cīnīs, cīnērīs.*

*īdīs, as lapīs, lapīdīs.*

We find also *līs, lītīs; sanguis, sanguīnīs; glīs, glīrīs.*

*ns* } by changing *s* into *tīs,* { *as pārens, pārentīs.*  
*rs* } { *ars, artīs.*

So also we find *trabs, trābīs; urbs, urbīs; hyems, hyēmīs; cœlebs,*  
*cœlībīs; princeps, princīpīs; but frons.*  
 (a leaf,) *frondīs; glans, glandīs.*

parisyllabic nouns ending in *is* make the accusative case singular to end in *im*,\* as, *turris*, *turrim*; and these and some others make the ablative to end both in *i* and *e*, as, *puppis*, abl. *puppi* and *puppe* (one, *vis*, makes only *vi*.) All nouns of the neuter gender form their nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in *a*; those which end in *al*, *ar* (except *far*,) and *e*, make them in *ia*. And such words, and most parisyllabic substantives of this declension, form their genitive case plural in *ium*.†

Words ending in

*ōs* make the gen. in *ōris*, as *flōs*, *flōris*.

*ōtis*, as *dos*, *dōtis*.

also *os* (a bone,) *ossis*.

*ōis*, as *heros* (borrowed from the Greek,) *herois*.

*us*, when neut. in *ēris*, as *ōpus*, *ōpēris*.

*ōris*, as *pēcus*, *pēcōris*.

when fem. in *ūtis*, as *virtūs*, *virtūtis*.

*ūdis*, as *pēcus*, *pēcūdis*.

We find also *Vēnus*, *Vēnēris*; *grus*, *gruis*: and the masculine *mus*, *mūris*.

*x* in *cis*, as *pax*, *pācis*.

*fax*, *fācis*.

*vervex*, *vervēcis*,

*nex*, *nēcis*.

*cornix*, *cornīcis*.

*cālix*, *cālicis*.

*vox*, *vōcis*.

*Cappadox*, *Cappādōcis*.

*lux*, *lūcis*.

*nux*, *nūcis*.

*lynx*, *lyncis*.

But *ex* makes also *īcis*, as *lātex*, *lātīcis*; we find also *rex*, *rēgis*; *grex*, *grēgis*; *rēmex*, *rēmīgis*; *nix*, *nīvis*; *nox*, *noctis*; *Phryx*, *Phrŷgis*.

\* Some, being chiefly Greek proper names, make the accusative singular in *in*, as *Pāris*, *Pārīn*, and these make the vocative in *ī*, as *Pārī*. Some imparisyllabic words also, derived from the Greek, being chiefly proper names, make the accusative singular to end in *ā*; and if they have a plural number, the plural nominative ends in *ēs*, and the accusative in *ās*, as *Pallās*, the goddess, *Pallādā*; *Pallās*, the man, *Pallanta*; *lampās*, acc. sing. *lampāda*, nom. and voc. pl. *lampādēs*, acc. *lampādās*. These words also sometimes are used by the poets with the dative case plural in *āsīn*, as *Trōās*, a Trojan woman, *Trōādā*. *Trōādēs*, *Trōāsīn*, *Trōādās*.

† *Vātes*, *sēnex*, *jūvēnis*, *āpis*, *cānis*, *vōlūcris*, are exceptions to this rule, and form their genitive plural in *ium*, not in *ium*. Most nouns of one syllable make the genitive plural in *um*; those of two or more syllables ending in *ns* or *rs*, make it both in *ium* and *um*. the former being the

Proper names ending in *as*, *antis*, make the vocative case singular to end in *ā*, as *Calchas*, *Calchantis*, voc. *Calchā*; and those in *es*, *is*, make it *ēs* and in *ē*, and make the accusative in *em* or in *ēn*; as, *Sophocles*, *Sophoclis*, accus. *Sophoclem* or *Sophoclen*, voc. *Sophocles* or *Sophoclē*.

*Singular.*

N. Nūbes, *a cloud*,  
G. Nūbis, *of a cloud*,  
D. Nūbi, *to a cloud*,  
A. Nūbem, *a cloud*,  
V. Nūbes, *o cloud*,  
A. Nūbe, *by a cloud*.

*Singular.*

N. Lāpis, *a stone*,  
G. Lāpīdis, *of a stone*,  
D. Lāpīdi, *to a stone*,  
A. Lāpīdem, *a stone*,  
V. Lāpis, *o stone*,  
A. Lāpīde, *by a stone*.

*Singular.*

N. ōpus, *a work*,  
G. ōpēris, *of a work*,  
D. ōpēri, *to a work*,  
A. ōpus, *a work*,  
V. ōpus, *o work*,  
A. ōpēre, *by a work*.

*Singular.*

N. Māre, *a sea*,  
G. Māris, *of a sea*,  
D. Māri, *to a sea*,  
A. Māre, *a sea*,  
V. Māre, *o sea*,  
A. Māri, or Māre, *by the sea*.

*Plural.*

N. Nūbes, *clouds*,  
G. Nūbium, *of clouds*,  
D. Nūbībus, *to clouds*,  
A. Nūbes, *clouds*,  
V. Nūbes, *o clouds*,  
A. Nūbībus, *by clouds*.

*Plural.*

N. Lāpīdes, *stones*,  
G. Lāpīdum, *of stones*,  
D. Lāpīdībus, *to stones*,  
A. Lāpīdes, *stones*,  
V. Lāpīdes, *o stones*,  
A. Lāpīdībus, *by stones*.

*Plural.*

N. ōpēra, *works*,  
G. ōpērum, *of works*,  
D. ōpēribus, *to works*,  
A. ōpēra, *works*,  
V. ōpēra, *o works*,  
A. ōpēribus, *by works*.

*Plural.*

N. Māria, *seas*,  
G. Mārium, *of seas*,  
D. Māribus, *to seas*,  
A. Māria, *seas*,  
V. Māria, *o seas*,  
A. Māribus, *by seas*.

Besides these words, there are some proper names derived from the Greek, which belong mainly to the second declension, but have some cases (especially in poetry) which belong to the third:

N. Orpheus,  
 G. Orphei, or Orpheōs,  
 D. Orptheo, or Orphēī, contr. Orphē̄,  
 A. Orpheum, or Orphēā, contr. Orphāē̄,  
 V. Orpheu,  
 A. Orptheo.

Sappho is thus declined :

N. Sappho,  
 G. Sapphūs,  
 D. Sappho,  
 A. Sappho,  
 V. Sappho,  
 A. Sappho.

#### THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ūs*, and in the nominative ends in *us*, being of either the masculine or feminine gender ; or in *u*, of the neuter gender.

| <i>Singular.</i>               | <i>Plural.</i>                   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| N. Grād-us, <i>a step,</i>     | N. Grād-us, <i>steps,</i>        |
| G. Grād-ūs, <i>of a step,</i>  | G. Grād-uum, <i>of steps,</i>    |
| D. Grād-ui, <i>to a step,</i>  | D. Grād-ibus, <i>to steps,</i>   |
| A. Grād-um, <i>a step,</i>     | A. Grād-us, <i>steps,</i>        |
| V. Grād-us, <i>o step,</i>     | V. Grād-us, <i>o steps,</i>      |
| A. Grād-u, <i>with a step.</i> | A. Grād-ibus, <i>with steps.</i> |

The dative in *ui* is sometimes contracted into *ū*, both in poetry and prose, as, *Parce metū*.—Virg.

| <i>Singular.</i>              | <i>Plural.</i>                  |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| N. Cornu, <i>a horn,</i>      | N. Cornua, <i>horns,</i>        |
| G. Cornūs, <i>of a horn,*</i> | G. Cornuum, <i>of horns,</i>    |
| D. Cornui, <i>to a horn,*</i> | D. Cornibus, <i>to horns,</i>   |
| A. Cornu, <i>a horn,</i>      | A. Cornua, <i>horns,</i>        |
| V. Cornu, <i>o horn,</i>      | V. Cornua, <i>o horns,</i>      |
| A. Cornu, <i>with a horn.</i> | A. Cornibus, <i>with horns.</i> |

*Dōmus*, a house, belongs partly to the fourth declension and partly to the second.

---

\* But the genitive and dative cases singular of words in *u* are scarcely ever found.

| <i>Singular.</i>                      | <i>Plural.</i>                            |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| N. Döm̄us, <i>a house,</i>            | N. Döm̄us, <i>houses,</i>                 |
| G. Döm̄ûs, <i>of a house,</i>         | G. Döm̄uum <i>and</i> döm̄orum, <i>of</i> |
| D. Döm̄ui & döm̄o, <i>to a house,</i> | <i>houses,</i>                            |
| A. Döm̄um, <i>a house,</i>            | D. Döm̄ibus, <i>to houses,</i>            |
| V. Döm̄us, <i>o house,</i>            | A. Döm̄os, <i>houses,</i>                 |
| A. Döm̄o, <i>by a house.</i>          | V. Döm̄us, <i>o houses,</i>               |
|                                       | A. Döm̄ibus, <i>by houses.</i>            |

#### THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *ei*, and in the nominative ends in *es*, being always of the feminine gender, with the exception of *dies*, a day, which is masculine and feminine in the singular, and only masculine in the plural; as,

| <i>Singular.</i>               | <i>Plural.</i>                   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| N. Făci-es, <i>a face,</i>     | N. Făci-es, <i>faces,</i>        |
| G. Făci-ēi, <i>of a face,</i>  | G. Făci-ērum, <i>of faces,</i>   |
| D. Făci-ēi, <i>to a face,</i>  | D. Făci-ēbus, <i>to faces,</i>   |
| A. Făci-em, <i>a face,</i>     | A. Făci-es, <i>faces,</i>        |
| V. Făci-es, <i>o face,</i>     | V. Făci-es, <i>o faces,</i>      |
| A. Făci-ē, <i>from a face.</i> | A. Făci-ēbus, <i>from faces.</i> |

The termination of the genitive singular in *ei* is sometimes contracted in poetry into *ē*; as, “*Libra diē somnique pares ubi fecerit horas.*”—Virg.

#### DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives are declined like substantives, and have either three terminations, masculine, feminine, and neuter; or two, the one masculine and feminine, and the other neuter; or one termination only, serving for the three genders. Most adjectives of three terminations are declined in the masculine and neuter genders, like substantives of the second declension, and in the feminine like substantives of the first declension; as, *bōnus*, good; *tēner*, tender; *āter*, black.



| <i>Singular.</i> |         |         | <i>Plural.</i> |           |        |
|------------------|---------|---------|----------------|-----------|--------|
| M.               | F.      | N.      | M.             | F.        | N.     |
| N. Bön-us,       | bon-a,  | bon-um, | N. Bön-i,      | bon-æ,    | bon-a, |
| G. Bon-i,        | bon-æ,  | bon-i,  | G. Bon-órum,   | bon-árum, | bon-   |
| D. Bon-o,        | bon-æ,  | bon-o,  | D. Bon-is;     |           | [órum, |
| A. Bon-um,       | bon-am, | bon-um, | A. Bon-os,     | bon-as,   | bon-a, |
| V. Bon-e,        | bon-a,  | bon-um, | V. Bon-i,      | bon-æ,    | bon-a, |
| A. Bon-o,        | bon-â,  | bon-o.  | A. Bon-is.     |           |        |

*Meus*, mine, makes in the vocative case sing. mas. *meus*, and *mî*,\* not *mee*.

| <i>Singular.</i> |          |           | <i>Plural.</i> |             |              |
|------------------|----------|-----------|----------------|-------------|--------------|
| M.               | F.       | N.        | M.             | F.          | N.           |
| N. Tën-er,       | teně-ra, | teně-rum, | N. Tene-ri,    | tene-ræ,    | tene-ra,     |
| G. Tene-ri,      | tene-ræ, | tene-ri,  | G. Tene-rórum, | tene-rárum, |              |
| D. Tene-ro,      | tene-ræ, | tene-ro,  | D. Tene-ris,   |             | [tene-rórum, |
| A. Tene-rum,     | -ram,    | -rum,     | A. Tene-ros,   | tene-ras,   | tene-ra,     |
| V. Ten-er,       | tene-ra, | tene-rum, | V. Tene-ri,    | tene-ræ,    | tene-ra,     |
| A. Tene-ro,      | tene-râ, | tene-ro.  | A. Tene-ris.   |             |              |

| <i>Singular.</i> |        |        | <i>Plural.</i> |          |          |
|------------------|--------|--------|----------------|----------|----------|
| M.               | F.     | N.     | M.             | F.       | N.       |
| N. Āter,         | atra,  | atrum, | N. Atri,       | atræ,    | atra,    |
| G. Atri,         | atræ,  | atri,  | G. Atroꝝrum,   | atrarum, | atrorum, |
| D. Atro,         | atræ,  | atro,  | D. Atris,      |          |          |
| A. Atrum,        | atram, | atrum, | A. Atros,      | atras,   | atra,    |
| V. Ater,         | atra,  | atrum, | V. Atri,       | atræ,    | atra,    |
| A. Atro,         | atrâ,  | atro.  | A. Atris.      |          |          |

Some adjectives in *er*, however, are declined in all the three genders like substantives of the third declension ; as, *ācer*, active.

| <i>Singular.</i> |        |       | <i>Plural.</i> |        |        |
|------------------|--------|-------|----------------|--------|--------|
| M.               | F.     | N.    | M.             | F.     | N.     |
| N. Ācer,         | acris, | acre, | N. Acres,      | acres, | acria, |
| G. Acris,        |        |       | G. Acrium,     |        |        |
| D. Acri,         |        |       | D. Acrībus,    |        |        |
| A. Acrem,        | acrem, | acre, | A. Acres,      | acres, | acria, |
| V. Acer,         | acris, | acre, | V. Acres,      | acres, | acria, |
| A. Acri.         |        |       | A. Acrībus.    |        |        |

\* *Mî* in the inferior Authors is occasionally used for the vocative of any gender of either number.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership gives  
access to 797,885 ancient  
and modern, fiction and  
non-fiction books.

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

| <i>Singular.</i>                 |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| M.F.                             | N. |
| N. Měli-or, měli-us,             |    |
| G. Měli-ōris,                    |    |
| D. Měli-ōri,                     |    |
| A. Měli-ōrem, měli-us,           |    |
| V. Měli-or, měli-us,             |    |
| A. Měli-ōre, <i>or</i> měli-ōri. |    |

| <i>Plural.</i>          |    |
|-------------------------|----|
| M.F.                    | N. |
| N. Měli-ōres, meli-ōra, |    |
| G. Měli-ōrum,           |    |
| D. Měli-ōřibus,         |    |
| A. Měli-ōres, měli-ōra, |    |
| V. Měli-ōres, měli-ōra, |    |
| A. Měli-ōřibus.         |    |

Adjectives of one termination, which however have two in acc. sing. and in nom. acc. and voc. pl. are also declined like substantives of the third declension, as *fēlix* happy, *ingens* vast.—And some have no neuter gender at all, except in particular cases, of which the most common are the dat. and abl. sing. and have never any distinctive neuter termination ; as, *měmor* mindful, *sūperstēs* surviving.

| <i>Singular.</i>               |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| M.F.                           | N. |
| N. Fēl-ix,                     |    |
| G. Fēlī-cis,                   |    |
| D. Fēlī-ci,                    |    |
| A. Fēlī-cem, fēl-ix,           |    |
| V. Fēl-ix,                     |    |
| A. Fēlī-ci, <i>or</i> feli-ce. |    |

| <i>Plural.</i>         |    |
|------------------------|----|
| M.F.                   | N. |
| N. Fēlī-ces, fēlī-cia, |    |
| G. Fēlī-cium,          |    |
| D. Fēlī-cibus,         |    |
| A. Fēlī-ces, fēlī-cia, |    |
| V. Fēlī-ces, fēlī-cia, |    |
| A. Fēlī-cibus.         |    |

| <i>Singular.</i>                               |    |
|------------------------------------------------|----|
| M.F.                                           | N. |
| N. <i>Ingens</i> ,                             |    |
| G. <i>Ingentis</i> ,                           |    |
| D. <i>Ingenti</i> ,                            |    |
| A. <i>Ingentem</i> , <i>ingens</i> ,           |    |
| V. <i>Ingens</i> ,                             |    |
| A. <i>Ingenti</i> , <i>or</i> <i>ingente</i> . |    |

| <i>Plural.</i>                         |    |
|----------------------------------------|----|
| M.F.                                   | N. |
| N. <i>Ingentes</i> , <i>ingentia</i> , |    |
| G. <i>Ingentium</i> ,                  |    |
| D. <i>Ingentibus</i> ,                 |    |
| A. <i>Ingentes</i> , <i>ingentia</i> , |    |
| V. <i>Ingentes</i> , <i>ingentia</i> , |    |
| A. <i>Ingentibus</i> .                 |    |

| <i>Singular.</i>             |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| N. Měmor,                    |  |
| G. Memōris,                  |  |
| D. Měmōri,                   |  |
| A. Měmōrem,                  |  |
| V. Měmor,                    |  |
| A. Měmōre, <i>or</i> měmōri. |  |

| <i>Plural.</i> |  |
|----------------|--|
| N. Měmōres,    |  |
| G. Měmōrum,    |  |
| D. Měmōřibus,  |  |
| A. Měmōres,    |  |
| V. Měmōres,    |  |
| A. Měmōřibus.  |  |

*Ambo* both, and *duo* two, are nouns adjective, and are thus declined, in the plural number only :

|              |           |           |                   |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|-------------------|
| N. Amb-o,    | amb-æ,    | amb-o,    | <i>both.</i>      |
| G. Amb-ōrum, | amb-ārum, | amb-ōrum, | <i>of both.</i>   |
| D. Amb-ōbus, | amb-ābus, | amb-ōbus, | <i>to both.</i>   |
| A. Amb-os,   | amb-as,   | amb-o,    | <i>both.</i>      |
| V. Amb-o,    | amb-æ,    | amb-o,    | <i>both.</i>      |
| A. Amb-ōbus, | amb-ābus, | amb-ōbus, | <i>with both.</i> |

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of signification, or comparison; the positive, the comparative, and the superlative :

I. The positive denotes the quality of a thing absolutely; as, *doctus* learned, *brēvis* short.

II. The comparative increases, or lessens the quality; as, *doctior* more learned, *brēvior* shorter, or more short :

And it is formed of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or* in the masculine and feminine genders, and *us* in the neuter; as, of

*Doctus*, gen. *docti*, is formed *doctior*, more learned :  
of

*Brēvis*, dat. *brēvi*, is formed *brēvior*, shorter.

III. The superlative increases, or diminishes the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree; as, *doctissimus* most learned, or very learned; *brevissimus* shortest, most short, or very short :

And it is formed also of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus*; as, of

Gen. *docti*, is formed *doctissimus*, most learned.

Dat. *brēvi*, is formed *brēvissimus*, shortest.

*Note.* Many Adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparisons irregularly; as,

|                 |         |                 |          |                   |           |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------|----------|-------------------|-----------|
| <i>Bonus</i> ,  | good;   | <i>mēlior</i> , | better;  | <i>optimus</i> ,  | best.     |
| <i>Mālus</i> ,  | bad;    | <i>pējor</i> ,  | worse;   | <i>pessimus</i> , | worst.    |
| <i>Magnus</i> , | great;  | <i>mājor</i> ,  | greater; | <i>maximus</i> ,  | greatest. |
| <i>Parvus</i> , | little; | <i>mīnor</i> ,  | less;    | <i>mīnimus</i> ,  | least.    |
| <i>Multus</i> , | much;   | <i>plus</i> ,   | more;    | <i>plūrimus</i> , | most.     |

*Nēquam*, wicked ; *nēquior*, more wicked ; *nēquissimus*, most wicked.

*Dives*, rich ; *dīvitiōr*, or *dītiōr*, more rich ; *dīvītissimus*, or *dītissimus*, most rich.

*Extērus*, outward ; *extērior*, more outward ; *extrēmus*, and *extīmus*, uttermost, or most outward.

*Infērus*, low ; *infērior*, lower, or more low ; *infīmus*, and *īmus*, lowest, or most low.

*Sūpērus*, high ; *sūpērior*, higher, or more high ; *suprēmus*, or *summus*, highest, or most high.

*Postērus*, subsequent ; *postērior*, later ; *postrēmus*, last.

*Dexter*, on the right hand ; *dextērior*, *dextīmus*, both in nearly the same sense as the positive.

*Jūvēnis*, young ; *jūnior*, younger, or more young.

*Sēnex*, old ; *sēnior*, older, or more old.

Adjectives in *-dīcus*, *-fīcus*, *-vōlus*, derived from the verbs *dico*, *facio*, *volo*, form their comparisons in *-entior* and *-entissimus*, as if from the present participle of these verbs ; as,

*Maledicus*, inclined to speak ill, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*.

*Beneficus*, inclined to do good, *beneficentior*, *beneficentissimus*.

*Benevolus*, wishing well, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*.

Some adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees are formed from prepositions ; as, from

*Intra*, within ; *intērior*, inner ; *intīmus*, inmost.

*Ultra*, beyond ; *ultērior*, further ; *ultīmus*, furthest, last.

*Citra*, on this side ; *citērior*, nearer ; *citīmus*, nearest.

*Prope*, near ; *prōpīor*, nearer ; *proxīmus*, nearest.

*Præ*, before ; *prīor*, before ; *prīmus*, first.

And some have no positive at all to which we can refer them ; as,

*dētērior*, worse ; *dēterrīmus*, worst.

*ōcyor*, swifter ; *ōcyssīmus*, swiftest.

*pōtior*, more desirable ; *pōtissīmus*, most desirable.

Adjectives ending in *er* form the superlative degree from the nominative case, by adding *rīmus* ; as, of *pulcher* fair, *pulcher-rīmus* fairest, or, most fair.

So too *vētus*, making in the gen. *vētēris*, though it has no comparative, makes in the superlative *vēterrīmus*.

The following adjectives in *lis* change *is* into *līmus* :

|                    |           |                       |             |                   |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| <i>Agil-is</i> ,   | nimble ;  | <i>āgil-līmus</i> ,   | nimblest,   | or, most nimble.  |
| <i>Fācil-is</i> ,  | easy ;    | <i>fācil-līmus</i> ,  | easiest,    | or, most easy.    |
| <i>Grācil-is</i> , | slender ; | <i>grācil-līmus</i> , | slenderest, | or, most slender. |
| <i>Hūmil-is</i> ,  | low ;     | <i>hūmil-līmus</i> ,  | lowest,     | or, most low.     |
| <i>Simil-is</i> ,  | like ;    | <i>simil-līmus</i> ,  | likest,     | or, most like.    |

Also, If a vowel comes before *us* in the nominative case of an adjective, the comparison is usually made by *māgis* more, and *maximè* most ; as,

*Pius*, godly ; *māgis pius*, more godly ; *maximè pius*, most godly.\*

### OF A PRONOUN.

A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a substantive, and is either itself a substantive, and called a *personal pronoun* ; or an adjective, being either a *demonstrative*, or *relative*, or *interrogative* pronoun. There are also *possessive* pronouns, which are adjectives derived from the genitive cases of the personal pronouns.

The pronouns are :

|               |                                                     |                                    |                             |                                                   |                           |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Egō</i> ,  | I,                                                  | } The personal<br>pronouns :       | <i>meus</i> ,               | mine,                                             | } Possessive<br>pronouns. |
| <i>tu</i> ,   | you,                                                |                                    | <i>tuus</i> ,               | your,                                             |                           |
| <i>sui</i> ,  | of himself,                                         |                                    | <i>suus</i> ,               | his own,                                          |                           |
|               |                                                     |                                    | <i>noster</i> ,             | ours,                                             |                           |
|               |                                                     | <i>vester</i> ,                    | yours, of <i>ye</i> ,       |                                                   |                           |
|               |                                                     |                                    | <i>qui</i> ,                | who, the relative pro-<br>noun, and its compounds |                           |
| <i>hic</i> ,  | this,                                               | } Demon-<br>strative<br>pronouns : | <i>quicunque</i> ,          | <i>quisquis</i> , etc.                            |                           |
| <i>is</i> ,   | he,                                                 |                                    | <i>qui</i> or <i>quis</i> , | who? the in-<br>terrogative pronoun.              |                           |
| <i>ille</i> , | he,                                                 |                                    |                             |                                                   |                           |
| <i>ipse</i> , | oneself,                                            |                                    |                             |                                                   |                           |
| <i>idem</i> , | (which is a<br>compound of<br><i>is</i> ) the same, |                                    |                             |                                                   |                           |

The syllable *met*, giving additional emphasis to the pronoun, is often added to *ēgō*, in all cases except the genitive, and to some of the cases of *tu* and of *sui* ; but to the nominative of *tu*, *met* is not added, but *te*, as nom. *tūtē*, acc. *tūtēmet*. The accusative and ablative cases of *sui* admit of a reduplication, as *sēsē*.

\* Juvenal uses *egregiūs* as the comparative of the adverb *egregiè*, and *piissimus* occurs in Seneca ; but these examples are not to be imitated.

## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

*Ego, tu, sui*, are pronouns substantive, and are thus declined :

| <i>Singular.</i> |                         | <i>Plural.</i> |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| N. Ego,          | <i>I,</i>               | N. Nos,        | <i>we,</i>              |
| G. Mei,          | <i>of me,</i>           | G. Nostr-ûm,   | <i>vel -i, of us,</i>   |
| D. Mihi,*        | <i>to me,</i>           | D. Nōbis,      | <i>to us,</i>           |
| A. Me,           | <i>me,</i>              | A. Nos,        | <i>us,</i>              |
| V. —             |                         | V. —           |                         |
| A. Me,           | <i>from, or, by me.</i> | A. Nōbis,      | <i>from, or, by us.</i> |

| <i>Singular.</i> |                            | <i>Plural.</i> |                           |
|------------------|----------------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| N. Tu,           | <i>thou, or, you,</i>      | N. Vos,        | <i>ye, or, you, [you,</i> |
| G. Tui,          | <i>of thee, or, you,</i>   | G. Vestr-ûm,   | <i>vel -i, of ye, or,</i> |
| D. Tibi,         | <i>to thee, or, you,</i>   | D. Vōbis,      | <i>to ye, or, you,</i>    |
| A. Te,           | <i>thee, or, you,</i>      | A. Vos,        | <i>ye, or, you,</i>       |
| V. Tu,           | <i>o thou, or, you,</i>    | V. Vos,        | <i>o ye,</i>              |
| A. Te,           | <i>with thee, or, you.</i> | A. Vōbis,      | <i>with ye, or, you.</i>  |

*Sui*, † of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined :

*Singular and Plural.*

|          |                    |   |                                     |
|----------|--------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| G. Sui,  | <i>of himself,</i> | } | <i>herself, themselves, &amp;c.</i> |
| D. Sibi, | <i>to himself,</i> |   |                                     |
| A. Se,   | <i>himself,</i>    |   |                                     |
| A. Se,   | <i>by himself,</i> |   |                                     |

| <i>Singular.</i> |              |             | <i>Plural.</i> |               |               |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| M.               | F.           | N.          | M.             | F.            | N.            |
| N. Hic, ‡        | <i>hæc,</i>  | <i>hoc,</i> | N. Hi,         | <i>hæ,</i>    | <i>hæc,</i>   |
| G. Hujus,        |              |             | G. Hōrum,      | <i>hārum,</i> | <i>hōrum,</i> |
| D. Huic,         |              |             | D. His,        |               |               |
| A. Hunc,         | <i>hanc,</i> | <i>hoc,</i> | A. Hos,        | <i>has,</i>   | <i>hæc,</i>   |
| V. —             |              |             | V. —           |               |               |
| A. Hôc,          | <i>hâc,</i>  | <i>hôc.</i> | A. His.        |               |               |

\* In poetry often contracted into *mî*.

† *Sui* and its possessive *suus* are called *reflective* pronouns, because they refer to that person or thing which is the principal word in the sentence.

‡ To *hic* is often added *ce*, giving additional emphasis in all cases and genders; and in interrogative sentences, sometimes *cine* is added; as, *hujusce, huncine, hosce*, etc.

*Ille* he, fem. *illa* she, neut. *illud* that, is thus declined :

| <i>Singular.</i>    |                 |                 | <i>Plural.</i>       |                   |                   |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| M.                  | F.              | N.              | N.                   | F.                | N.                |
| N. <i>Ille</i> ,    | <i>ill-a</i> ,  | <i>ill-ud</i> , | N. <i>Ill-i</i> ,    | <i>ill-æ</i> ,    | <i>ill-a</i> ,    |
| G. <i>Ill-ius</i> , |                 |                 | G. <i>Ill-ōrum</i> , | <i>ill-ārum</i> , | <i>ill-ōrum</i> , |
| D. <i>Ill-i</i> ,   |                 |                 | D. <i>Ill-is</i> ,   |                   |                   |
| A. <i>Ill-um</i> ,  | <i>ill-am</i> , | <i>ill-ud</i> , | A. <i>Ill-os</i> ,   | <i>ill-as</i> ,   | <i>ill-a</i> ,    |
| V. —                |                 |                 | V. —                 |                   |                   |
| A. <i>Ill-o</i> ,   | <i>ill-â</i> ,  | <i>ill-o</i> .  | A. <i>Ill-is</i> .   |                   |                   |

In like manner is also declined *iste* that, and *ipse* he himself ; except that this last makes *ipsum* in the nominative and accusative cases singular of the neuter gender.

*Is, ea, id*, he, she, or that, is thus declined :

| <i>Singular.</i> |              |             | <i>Plural.</i>               |                |                |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| M.               | F.           | N.          | M.                           | F.             | N.             |
| N. <i>Is</i> ,   | <i>ea</i> ,  | <i>id</i> , | N. <i>Ii</i> ,               | <i>eæ</i> ,    | <i>ea</i> ,    |
| G. <i>Ejus</i> , |              |             | G. <i>Eórum</i> ,            | <i>eárum</i> , | <i>eórum</i> , |
| D. <i>Ei</i> ,   |              |             | D. <i>Iis</i> , <i>vel</i> , | <i>eis</i> ,   |                |
| A. <i>Eum</i> ,  | <i>eam</i> , | <i>id</i> , | A. <i>Eos</i> ,              | <i>eas</i> ,   | <i>ea</i> ,    |
| V. —             |              |             | V. —                         |                |                |
| A. <i>Eo</i> ,   | <i>eâ</i> ,  | <i>eo</i> . | A. <i>Iis</i> , <i>vel</i> , | <i>eis</i> .   |                |

In like manner also is declined its compound, *idem* the same ; as, nom. *īdem*, *eādem*, *īdem* ; gen. *eiusdem*, &c.

The relative *qui*, who, is thus declined :

| <i>Singular.</i>  |               |               | <i>Plural.</i>      |                 |                 |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M.                | F.            | N.            | M.                  | F.              | N.              |
| N. <i>Qui</i> ,   | <i>quæ</i> ,  | <i>quod</i> , | N. <i>Qui</i> ,     | <i>quæ</i> ,    | <i>quæ</i> ,    |
| G. <i>Cujus</i> , |               |               | G. <i>Quorum</i> ,  | <i>quarum</i> , | <i>quorum</i> , |
| D. <i>Cui</i> ,   |               |               | D. <i>Quībus</i> ,* |                 |                 |
| A. <i>Quem</i> ,  | <i>quam</i> , | <i>quod</i> , | A. <i>Quos</i> ,    | <i>quas</i> ,   | <i>quæ</i> ,    |
| V. —              |               |               | V. —                |                 |                 |
| A. <i>Quo</i> ,   | <i>quâ</i> ,  | <i>quo</i> .  | A. <i>Quībus</i> .  |                 |                 |

In like manner also are declined its compounds, *quidam*, a certain one ; *quivis*, *quīlibet*, any one ; *quicumque*, whosoever, &c. &c.

\* *Quībus* is often contracted into *queis*, or *quīs*, in poetry, and in some (but not in the purest) prose writers.



The *indefinite* pronoun *quis*, any one, (not found except after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, *quo*, *quanto*, or *quum*,) is declined like *qui*, except that in the nom. sing. fem. and also in the nom. and acc. pl. neut. it makes both *quæ* and (more usually) *quã*; and in the nom. and acc. neut. sing. it makes *quid*.

The *interrogative* pronoun, when joined with a substantive, is *qui* \* when standing without a substantive, the nom. sing. masc. is *quis?* and in the nom. and acc. sing. neut. *quid?*

*Quisquis*, whosoever, is confined to the following cases :

|      |            |            |                        |
|------|------------|------------|------------------------|
| Nom. | Quisquis,  | —————      | quidquid, or quicquid, |
| Acc. | —————      | —————      | quidquid, or quicquid, |
| Abl. | M. Quoquo, | N. quoquo. |                        |

## OF A VERB.

A VERB is that part of speech by which it is declared that the subject of a sentence *does* or *suffers* something.

Verbs have two voices; the *active*, ending in *o*; the *passive*, ending in *or*.

Of verbs ending in *o* some are *transitive*, that is to say, in them the action passes on to a noun following; as, *amo te*, "I love you." And these verbs have a passive voice, which is made by changing *o* into *or*; as, *amor*, "I am loved."

Some are *intransitive*, that is to say, the action expressed by them does not pass on to any noun following, but is complete in itself; as, *curro*, "I run:" and these verbs have no passive voice.†

Three verbs, *fīo*, "I become;" *vāpūlo*, "I am beaten;" *vēneo*, "I am sold," have a passive signification, but an active form (except that *fīo* makes *factus sum* in the perfect;) and are called *neutral passives*.

\* There are a few instances of *quis* also being used with a substantive, but, except in poetry, it is seldom done, except to avoid an open vowel.

† But, from these verbs, impersonal verbs are often formed of the third singular passive; as, *vivitur*, "it is lived by men," that is to say, "men live, one lives," &c.; *itur*, "men go, one goes," &c.; *ventum est*, "I, or you, or he came," &c.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

tive; as, *sis bōnus*, “may you be propitious;” *āmet*, “let him love.”

The *infinitive* mood has neither number, person, or nominative case before it; and is known commonly by the sign *to*; as, *amāre*, “to love.” It is also often used as a nominative or accusative case neuter; as, *errāre humānum est*, “to err is human.”

#### OF TENSES.

Verbs have six tenses or times, expressing the time of an action; the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the first future, and second future, or future perfect.

The *present* tense speaks of a thing now existing, or now doing; as, *āmo*, “I love;” *lōquor*, “I am speaking;” *sum*, “I am.”

The *imperfect* tense speaks of a thing that was being done, but was not terminated, at some particular past time; as, *āmābam*, “I was loving.” And sometimes it expresses a habit; as, *dīcēbam*, “I used to say.” And is formed by changing—

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| In the first conjugation | <i>o</i> into <i>-ābam</i> ,  |
| In the second . . . .    | <i>o</i> into <i>-bam</i> ,   |
| In the third and fourth  | <i>o</i> into <i>-ēbam</i> .* |

The *perfect* tense speaks of an action terminated; as, *āmāvi*, “I loved,” or “have loved,” and is formed as will be shewn in the *As in præsenti*.

The *pluperfect* speaks of a thing done at some time past, and then ended; as, *āmāvēram*, “I had loved;” and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ēram*.

The *first future* tense speaks of a thing to be done hereafter; as, *āmābo*, “I shall love;” and is formed from the present by changing—

|                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| In the first conjugation | <i>o</i> into <i>ābo</i> , |
| In the second . . . .    | <i>o</i> into <i>bo</i> ,  |
| In the third and fourth  | <i>o</i> into <i>am</i> .  |

---

\* The Poets often make the imperfect of the fourth conjugation in *bam*, instead of *-iebam*; as, “*Lenibat dictis animum.*” Virg.

The *second future*, or *future perfect*, speaks of a thing which will have been done when something else has been done ; as, *āmāvĕro*, “I shall have loved ;” and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ĕro*.

#### GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have three *gerunds*, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which supply the oblique cases of the infinitive present active as, *āmandi*, “of loving ;” *āmandum*, “loving ;” *āmando*, “by loving,” &c. ; and they are formed from the present by changing—

|                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| In the first conjugation | <i>o</i> into <i>andi</i> ,  |
| In the second            | <i>eo</i> into <i>endi</i> , |
| In the third and fourth  | <i>o</i> into <i>endi</i> .  |

They have two *supines*, which are also used to supply cases for the infinitive and are formed, as will be taught in the *As in præsenti*.

The supine in *um* is used only with verbs expressing or implying a motion to a place ; as, *eo dormitum*, “I go to sleep.”

The supine in *u* has a passive sense, and is used only after adjectives, or after one or two substantives used as adjectives ; as, *turpe factu*, “base to be done ;” *nĕfas dictu*, “wicked to be said.” But there are many verbs which have no supine.

#### PARTICIPLES.

THERE are four participles ; two active, and two passive :—

The participle of the present active, which signifies a present action, and ends in *ans* in the first conjugation, and in *ens* in the others ; as, *āmans*, “loving ;” *mōnens*, “warning.”

The participle future active ending in *ūrus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing anything ; as, *āmātūrus*, “about to love,” or “likely to love.”

The participle perfect passive, which signifies what is actually done and completed ; as, *amātus*, “loved ;” *mōnītus*, “having been warned.” But in deponent verbs this participle has commonly an active signification ; as, *locūtus hæc*, “having spoken these things.”

Another participle passive, called also the *gerundive*, which denotes that what is spoken of must happen, ought to happen, or (sometimes) is actually happening, with respect to a person or thing ; as, *amandus*, “who must, or ought to be loved ;” *in epistolâ scribendâ*, “in writing the letter.”

#### OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two numbers, singular and plural, like nouns ; and three persons in each number.

| <i>Singular.</i> |                  | <i>Plural.</i> |                   |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. Ego amo,      | <i>I love.</i>   | Nos amāmus,    | <i>We love.</i>   |
| 2. Tu amas,      | <i>you love.</i> | Vos amātis,    | <i>ye love.</i>   |
| 3. Ille amat,    | <i>he loves.</i> | Illi amant,    | <i>they love.</i> |

All nouns, except *ego* and *tu*, are of the third person.

#### OF THE VERB *Esse*, to be.

*Before other verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the verb esse, to be.*

*Sum, es, fui, esse, futūrus, to be.*

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. Present Tense.—*am.*

|            |                 |              |                  |
|------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| Sing. Sum, | <i>I am.</i>    | Plur. Sūmus, | <i>We are.</i>   |
| Ēs,        | <i>you are.</i> | Estis,       | <i>ye are.</i>   |
| Est,       | <i>he is.</i>   | Sunt,        | <i>they are.</i> |

##### 2. Imperfect Tense.—*was.*

|             |                  |               |                   |
|-------------|------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| Sing. Ēram, | <i>I was.</i>    | Plur. Ērāmus, | <i>We were.</i>   |
| Ēras,       | <i>you were.</i> | Ērātis,       | <i>ye were.</i>   |
| Ērat,       | <i>he was.</i>   | Ērant,        | <i>they were.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

|                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Fui,                 | <i>I have been.</i>    |
| Fuisti,                    | <i>you have been.</i>  |
| Fuit,                      | <i>he has been.</i>    |
| Plur. Fuimus,              | <i>We have been.</i>   |
| Fuistis,                   | <i>ye have been.</i>   |
| Fuērunt, <i>vel</i> fuēre, | <i>they have been.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

|                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. Fueram,   | <i>I had been.</i>    |
| Fuēras,         | <i>you had been.</i>  |
| Fuērat,         | <i>he had been.</i>   |
| Plur. Fuērāmus, | <i>We had been.</i>   |
| Fuērātis,       | <i>ye had been.</i>   |
| Fuērant,        | <i>they had been.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

|               |                      |
|---------------|----------------------|
| Sing. Ēro,    | <i>I shall be.</i>   |
| Ēris,         | <i>you will be.</i>  |
| Ērit,         | <i>he will be.</i>   |
| Plur. Ērīmus, | <i>We shall be.</i>  |
| Ērītis,       | <i>ye will be.</i>   |
| Ērunt,        | <i>they will be.</i> |

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have*

|                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. Fuēro,    | <i>I shall have been.</i>   |
| Fuēris,         | <i>you will have been.</i>  |
| Fuērit,         | <i>he will have been.</i>   |
| Plur. Fuērīmus, | <i>We shall have been.</i>  |
| Fuērītis,       | <i>ye will have been.</i>   |
| Fuērint,        | <i>they will have been.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                     |                                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| Sing. Es, esto,     | <i>Be thou.</i>                  |
| Esto,               | <i>be he, or, let him be.</i>    |
| Plur. Este, estōte, | <i>Be ye.</i>                    |
| Sunto,              | <i>be they, or, let them be.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

|            |                    |  |              |                     |
|------------|--------------------|--|--------------|---------------------|
| Sing. Sim, | <i>I may be.</i>   |  | Plur. Sīmus, | <i>We may be.</i>   |
| Sis,       | <i>you may be.</i> |  | Sītis,       | <i>ye may be.</i>   |
| Sit,       | <i>he may be.</i>  |  | Sint,        | <i>they may be.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, &c.*

|                                     |                       |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. Essem, <i>vel, förem,</i>     | <i>I might be.</i>    |
| Essez, <i>vel, föres,</i>           | <i>you might be.</i>  |
| Esset, <i>vel, föret,</i>           | <i>he might be.</i>   |
| Plur. Essēmus, <i>vel, förēmus,</i> | <i>We might be.</i>   |
| Essētis, <i>vel, förētis,</i>       | <i>ye might be.</i>   |
| Essent, <i>vel, förent,</i>         | <i>they might be.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have, &c.*

|                 |                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| Sing. Fuërim,   | <i>I may have been.</i>    |
| Fuëris,         | <i>you may have been.</i>  |
| Fuërit,         | <i>he may have been.</i>   |
| Plur. Fuërimus, | <i>We may have been.</i>   |
| Fuëritis,       | <i>ye may have been.</i>   |
| Fuërint,        | <i>they may have been.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, would have, &c.*

|                  |                                         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Fuissem,   | <i>I might, or, would have been.</i>    |
| Fuisses,         | <i>you might, or, would have been.</i>  |
| Fuisset,         | <i>he might, or, would have been.</i>   |
| Plur. Fuissēmus, | <i>We might, or, would have been.</i>   |
| Fuissētis,       | <i>ye might, or, would have been.</i>   |
| Fuissent,        | <i>they might, or, would have been.</i> |

5. Future Tense.—*may be about, &c.*

|                     |                                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Sing. Fütūrus sim,* | <i>I may be about to be.</i>    |
| Fütūrus sis,        | <i>you may be about to be.</i>  |
| Fütūrus sit,        | <i>he may be about to be.</i>   |
| Plur. Fütūri sīmus, | <i>We may be about to be.</i>   |
| Fütūri sītis,       | <i>ye may be about to be.</i>   |
| Fütūri sint,        | <i>they may be about to be.</i> |

---

\* *Fütūrus*, being in reality a participle, agrees with its substantive

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense,

Esse, *to be.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense,

Fuisse, *to have been.*

Future Tense,

Före, *vel*, Fütūrum esse, *to be about to be.*

Participle future,\*

Fütūrus, *about to be.*

## DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

VERBS have four conjugations, both in the active and passive voice.

The first conjugation has *ā* in the penultima (or last syllable but one) of the infinitive mood active; as, *āmo*, *āmāre*.†

The second has *ē*; as, *mōnĕo*, *mōnĕre*.

The third has *ĕ*; as, *rĕgo*, *rĕgĕre*.

The fourth has *ī*; as, *audĭo*, *audĭre*.

VERBS ACTIVE in *O* are declined after these examples.

1. Am-o, am-as, am-āvi, am-āre; aman-di, aman-do, aman-dum; amāt-um, amāt-u; am-ans, amātu-rus:  
*to love.*

---

in gender and number; so that in the singular it may be either *futurus*, *futura*, or *futurum*; in the plural, *futuri*, *-æ*, or *-a*.

\* Some compounds of *sum* have also a present participle; as, *absum* to be absent, part. *absens*, absent, or being absent.

† Except *do*, “to give;” which makes *dāre*, *dātum*.



2. Mōn-eo, mon-es, mon-ui, mon-ēre ; monen-di, monen-do, monen-dum ; monīt-um, monīt-u ; mon-ens, monītū-rus : *to advise.*

3. Rĕg-o,\* reg-is, rex-i, reg-ĕre ; regen-di, regen-do, regen-dum ; rect-um, rect-u ; reg-ens, rectu-rus : *to rule.*

4. Aud-io, aud-is, aud-īvi, aud-īre ; audien-di, audien-do, audien-dum ; audīt-um, audīt-u ; audi-ens, auditu-rus : *to hear.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amo.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

|                |                                            |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Ām-o,    | <i>I love, am loving, or, do love.</i>     |
| ām-as,         | <i>you love, are loving, or, do love.</i>  |
| ām-at,         | <i>he loves, is loving, or, does love.</i> |
| Plur. Ām-āmus, | <i>We love, are loving, or, do love.</i>   |
| ām-ātis,       | <i>ye love, are loving, or, do love.</i>   |
| ām-ant,        | <i>they love, are loving, or, do love.</i> |

#### 2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

|                  |                                        |
|------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Ām-ābam,   | <i>I did love, or, was loving.</i>     |
| am-ābas,         | <i>you did love, or, were loving.</i>  |
| am-ābat,         | <i>he did love, or, was loving.</i>    |
| Plur. Am-ābāmus, | <i>We did love, or, were loving.</i>   |
| am-ābātis,       | <i>ye did love, or, were loving.</i>   |
| am-ābant,        | <i>they did love, or, were loving.</i> |

#### 3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

|                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Sing. Āmāv-i,               | <i>I loved, or, have loved.</i>    |
| amāv-isti,                  | <i>you loved, or, have loved.</i>  |
| amāv-it,                    | <i>he loved, or, has loved.</i>    |
| Plur. Amāv-īmus,            | <i>We loved, or, have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-istis,                 | <i>ye loved, or, have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-ērunt, <i>vel-ĕre,</i> | <i>they loved, or, have loved.</i> |

\* The following is the way in which a Verb of the third Conjugation ending in *-io* is declined :—Fūg-io, fug-is, fūg-i, fug-ĕrĕ ; fugien-di, fugien-do, fugien-dum ; fugīt-um, fugīt-u ; fugi-ens, fugītu-rus.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership gives  
access to 797,885 ancient  
and modern, fiction and  
non-fiction books.

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should, would.*

|                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. Ām-ārem,   | <i>I might love.</i>    |
| am-āres,         | <i>you might love.</i>  |
| am-āret,         | <i>he might love.</i>   |
| Plur. Am-ārēmus, | <i>We might love.</i>   |
| am-ārētis,       | <i>ye might love.</i>   |
| am-ārent,        | <i>they might love.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

|                    |                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. Āmāv-ĕrim,   | <i>I may have loved.</i>    |
| amāv-ĕris,         | <i>you may have loved.</i>  |
| amāv-ĕrit,         | <i>he may have loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Amāv-ĕrimus, | <i>We may have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-ĕritis,       | <i>ye may have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-ĕrint,        | <i>they may have loved.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have.*

|                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| Sing. Āmāv-issem,   | <i>I would have loved.</i>    |
| amāv-isses,         | <i>you would have loved.</i>  |
| amāv-isset,         | <i>he would have loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Amāv-issēmus, | <i>We would have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-issētis,       | <i>ye would have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-issent,        | <i>they would have loved.</i> |

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

|                       |                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Sing. Āmātū-rus sim,  | <i>I may be about to love.</i>    |
| amatu-rus sis,        | <i>you may be about to love.</i>  |
| amatu-rus sit,        | <i>he may be about to love.</i>   |
| Plur. Amatu-ri simus, | <i>We may be about to love.</i>   |
| amatu-ri sitis,       | <i>ye may be about to love.</i>   |
| amatu-ri sint,        | <i>they may be about to love.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Āmā-re,                    *to love.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Āmāv-isse,                *to have loved.*

## Future Tense.

Āmātū-rum esse, *or, före,*      *to be about to love.*

## GERUNDS.

|           |                   |
|-----------|-------------------|
| Āman-di,  | <i>of loving.</i> |
| Aman-do,  | <i>in loving.</i> |
| Aman-dum, | <i>to love.</i>   |

## SUPINES.

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Active,                  | Passive,                    |
| Āmāt-um, <i>to love.</i> | Āmāt-u, <i>to be loved.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                        |                                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Present Tense,         | Future,                          |
| Ām-ans, <i>loving.</i> | Āmātū-rus, <i>about to love.</i> |

SECOND CONJUGATION.—*Moneo.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense. —*do, am.*

|                 |                                                  |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Mön-eo,   | <i>I advise, am advising, or, do advise.</i>     |
| mön-es,         | <i>you advise, are advising or, do advise.</i>   |
| mön-et,         | <i>he advises, is advising, or, does advise.</i> |
| Plur. Mön-ēmus, | <i>We advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>   |
| mön-ētis,       | <i>ye advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>   |
| mön-ent,        | <i>they advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

|                   |                                            |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Mön-ēbam,   | <i>I did advise, or, was advising.</i>     |
| mön-ēbas,         | <i>you did advise, or, were advising.</i>  |
| mön-ēbat,         | <i>he did advise, or, was advising.</i>    |
| Plur. Mön-ēbāmus, | <i>We did advise, or, were advising.</i>   |
| mön-ēbātis,       | <i>ye did advise, or, were advising.</i>   |
| mön-ēbant,        | <i>they did advise, or, were advising.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*have*.

|                      |                                        |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Mõnu-i,        | <i>I advised, or, have advised.</i>    |
| mõnu-isti,           | <i>you advised, or, have advised.</i>  |
| mõnu-it,             | <i>he advised, or, has advised.</i>    |
| Plur. Mõnu-ĩmus,     | <i>We advised, or, have advised.</i>   |
| mõnu-istis,          | <i>ye advised, or, have advised.</i>   |
| mõnu-ērunt, v. -ēre, | <i>they advised, or, have advised.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had*.

|                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| Sing. Mõnu-ěram,   | <i>I had advised.</i>    |
| mõnu-ěras,         | <i>you had advised.</i>  |
| mõnu-ěrat,         | <i>he had advised.</i>   |
| Plur. Mõnu-ěramus, | <i>We had advised.</i>   |
| mõnu-ěrātis,       | <i>ye had advised.</i>   |
| mõnu-ěrant,        | <i>they had advised.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will*.

|                   |                                   |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Sing. Mõnē-bo,    | <i>I shall advise.</i>            |
| mõnē-bis,         | <i>you will advise.</i>           |
| mõnē-bit,         | <i>he will advise.</i>            |
| Plur. Mõnē-bĩmus, | <i>We shall, or, will advise.</i> |
| mõnē-bĩtis,       | <i>ye will advise.</i>            |
| mõnē-bunt,        | <i>they will advise.</i>          |

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have, will have*.

|                    |                                |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| Sing. Monu-ěro,    | <i>I shall have advised.</i>   |
| monu-ěris,         | <i>you will have advised.</i>  |
| monu-ěrit,         | <i>he will have advised.</i>   |
| Plur. Monu-ěrĩmus, | <i>We shall have advised.</i>  |
| monu-ěrĩtis,       | <i>ye will have advised.</i>   |
| monu-ěrint,        | <i>they will have advised.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. Mõn-e, mon-ēto,     | <i>Advise thou.</i>     |
| mon-ēto,                  | <i>let him advise.</i>  |
| Plur. Mon-ēte, mon-ētōte, | <i>Advise ye.</i>       |
| mon-ento,                 | <i>let them advise.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

|                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. Mone-am,   | <i>I may advise.</i>    |
| mone-as,         | <i>you may advise.</i>  |
| mone-at,         | <i>he may advise.</i>   |
| Plur. Mone-āmus, | <i>We may advise.</i>   |
| mone-ātis,       | <i>ye may advise.</i>   |
| mone-ant,        | <i>they may advise.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, would*.

|                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| Sing. Monē-rem,   | <i>I might advise.</i>    |
| monē-res,         | <i>you might advise.</i>  |
| monē-ret,         | <i>he might advise.</i>   |
| Plur. Monē-rēmus, | <i>We might advise.</i>   |
| monē-rētis,       | <i>ye might advise.</i>   |
| monē-rent,        | <i>they might advise.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have*.

|                    |                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Sing. Monu-ērim,   | <i>I may have advised.</i>    |
| monu-ēris,         | <i>you may have advised.</i>  |
| monu-ērit,         | <i>he may have advised.</i>   |
| Plur. Monu-ērīmus, | <i>We may have advised.</i>   |
| monu-ērītis,       | <i>ye may have advised.</i>   |
| monu-ērīnt,        | <i>they may have advised.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have*.

|                     |                                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Sing. Monu-issem,   | <i>I would have advised.</i>    |
| monu-isses,         | <i>you would have advised.</i>  |
| monu-isset,         | <i>he would have advised.</i>   |
| Plur. Monu-issēmus, | <i>We would have advised.</i>   |
| monu-issētis,       | <i>ye would have advised.</i>   |
| monu-issent,        | <i>they would have advised.</i> |

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to*.

|                        |                                     |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Sing. Mōnītū-rus sim,  | <i>I may be about to advise.</i>    |
| monitu-rus sis,        | <i>you may be about to advise.</i>  |
| monitu-rus sit,        | <i>he may be about to advise.</i>   |
| Plur. Mōnītū-ri sīmus, | <i>We may be about to advise.</i>   |
| monitu-ri sītis,       | <i>ye may be about to advise.</i>   |
| monitu-ri sint,        | <i>they may be about to advise.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Mon-ēre, *to advise.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Monu-isse, *to have advised.*

## Future Tense.

Monitū-rum esse, or fōre, *to be about to advise.*

## GERUNDS.

|            |                     |
|------------|---------------------|
| Monen-di,  | <i>of advising.</i> |
| monen-do,  | <i>in advising.</i> |
| monen-dum, | <i>to advise.</i>   |

## SUPINES.

## Active.

Monit-um, *to advise.*

## Passive.

Monit-u, *to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## Present Tense.

Mon-ens, *advising.*

## Future.

Monitū-rus, *about to advise.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕgo.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

|                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Sing. Rĕg-o,<br/>rĕg-is,<br/>rĕg-it,</p> <p>Plur. Rĕg-ĭmas,<br/>rĕg-ĭtis,<br/>rĕg-unt,</p> | <p><i>I rule, am ruling, or, do rule.</i><br/><i>you rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i><br/><i>he rules, is ruling, or, does rule.</i><br/><i>We rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i><br/><i>ye rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i><br/><i>they rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i></p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

|                   |                                        |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕgĕ-bam,   | <i>I did rule, or, was ruling.</i>     |
| rĕgĕ-bas,         | <i>you did rule, or, were ruling.</i>  |
| rĕgĕ-bat,         | <i>he did rule, or, was ruling.</i>    |
| Plur. Rĕgĕ-bāmus, | <i>We did rule, or, were ruling.</i>   |
| rĕgĕ-bātis,       | <i>ye did rule, or, were ruling,</i>   |
| rĕgĕ-bant,        | <i>they did rule, or, were ruling.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

|                    |                                    |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-i,       | <i>I ruled, or, have ruled.</i>    |
| rex-isti,          | <i>you ruled, or, have ruled.</i>  |
| rex-it,            | <i>he ruled, or, has ruled.</i>    |
| Plur. Rex-īmus,    | <i>We ruled, or, have ruled.</i>   |
| rex-istis,         | <i>ye ruled, or, have ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ērunt, v. ēre, | <i>they ruled, or, have ruled.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-ĕram,   | <i>I had ruled.</i>    |
| rex-ĕras,         | <i>you had ruled.</i>  |
| rex-ĕrat,         | <i>he had ruled.</i>   |
| Plur. Rex-ĕrāmus, | <i>We had ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ĕrātis,       | <i>ye had ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ĕrant,        | <i>they had ruled.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

|                 |                        |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕg-am,   | <i>I shall rule.</i>   |
| rĕg-es,         | <i>you will rule.</i>  |
| rĕg-et,         | <i>he will rule.</i>   |
| Plur. Rĕg-ēmus, | <i>We shall rule.</i>  |
| rĕg-ētis,       | <i>ye shall rule.</i>  |
| rĕg-ent,        | <i>they will rule.</i> |

6. Second Future, or, Future Perfect Tense —*shall have, will have.*

|                   |                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-ĕro,    | <i>I shall have ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ĕris,         | <i>you will have ruled.</i>  |
| rex-ĕrit,         | <i>he will have ruled.</i>   |
| Plur. Rex-ĕrīmus, | <i>We shall have ruled.</i>  |
| rex-ĕrītis,       | <i>ye will have ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ĕrint,        | <i>they will have ruled.</i> |



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                                        |                                           |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕg-e, reg-ĭto,<br>rĕg-ĭto,      | <i>Rule thou.</i><br><i>let him rule.</i> |
| Plur. Rĕg-ite, reg-ĭtote,<br>rĕg-unto, | <i>Rule ye.</i><br><i>let them rule.</i>  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

|                                          |                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕg-am,<br>rĕg-as,<br>rĕg-at,      | <i>I may rule.</i><br><i>you may rule.</i><br><i>he may rule.</i>   |
| Plur. Rĕg-āmus,<br>rĕg-ātis,<br>rĕg-ant, | <i>We may rule.</i><br><i>ye may rule.</i><br><i>they may rule.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might.*

|                                                |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕg-ĕrem,<br>rĕg-ĕres,<br>rĕg-ĕret,      | <i>I might rule.</i><br><i>you might rule.</i><br><i>he might rule.</i>   |
| Plur. Rĕg-ĕrĕmus,<br>rĕg-ĕrĕtis,<br>rĕg-ĕrent, | <i>We might rule.</i><br><i>ye might rule.</i><br><i>they might rule.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

|                                                |                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-ĕrim,<br>rex-ĕris,<br>rex-ĕrit,      | <i>I may have ruled.</i><br><i>you may have ruled.</i><br><i>he may have ruled.</i>   |
| Plur. Rex-ĕrĭmus,<br>rex-ĕrĭtis,<br>rex-ĕrint, | <i>We may have ruled.</i><br><i>ye may have ruled.</i><br><i>they may have ruled.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have.*

|                                                   |                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-issem,<br>rex-isses,<br>rex-isset,      | <i>I would have ruled.</i><br><i>you would have ruled.</i><br><i>he would have ruled.</i>   |
| Plur. Rex-issĕmus,<br>rex-issĕtis,<br>rex-issent, | <i>We would have ruled.</i><br><i>ye would have ruled.</i><br><i>they would have ruled.</i> |



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

|                    |                                         |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audiē-bam,   | <i>I did hear, or, was hearing.</i>     |
| audiē-bas,         | <i>you did hear, or, were hearing.</i>  |
| audiē-bat,         | <i>he did hear, or, was hearing.</i>    |
| Plur. Audiē-bāmus, | <i>We did hear, or, were hearing.</i>   |
| audiē-bātis,       | <i>ye did hear, or, were hearing.</i>   |
| audiē-bant,        | <i>they did hear, or, were hearing.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

|                       |                                    |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-i,        | <i>I heard, or, have heard.</i>    |
| audīv-isti,           | <i>you heard, or, have heard.</i>  |
| audīv-it,             | <i>he heard, or, has heard.</i>    |
| Plur. Audīv-īmus,     | <i>We heard, or, have heard.</i>   |
| audīv-istis,          | <i>ye heard, or, have heard.</i>   |
| audīv-ērunt, v. -ēre, | <i>they heard, or, have heard.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-ēram,   | <i>I had heard.</i>    |
| audīv-ēras,         | <i>you had heard.</i>  |
| audīv-ērat,         | <i>he had heard.</i>   |
| Plur. Audīv-ērāmus, | <i>We had heard.</i>   |
| audīv-ērātis,       | <i>ye had heard.</i>   |
| audīv-ērant,        | <i>they had heard.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Audi-am,   | <i>I shall hear.</i>   |
| audi-es,         | <i>you will hear.</i>  |
| audi-et,         | <i>he will hear.</i>   |
| Plur. Audi-ēmus, | <i>We shall hear.</i>  |
| audi-ētis,       | <i>ye will hear.</i>   |
| audi-ent,        | <i>they will hear.</i> |

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have, will have.*

|                     |                              |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-ēro,    | <i>I shall have heard.</i>   |
| Audīv-ēris,         | <i>you will have heard.</i>  |
| Audīv-ērit,         | <i>he will have heard.</i>   |
| Plur. Audīv-ērīmus, | <i>We shall have heard.</i>  |
| Audīv-ērītis,       | <i>ye will have heard.</i>   |
| Audīv-ērint,        | <i>they will have heard.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                                         |                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Sing. Aud-i, aud-īto,<br>aud-īto,       | <i>Hear thou,<br/>let him hear.</i> |
| Plur. Aud-īte, aud-ītōte,<br>aud-iunto, | <i>Hear ye.<br/>let them hear.</i>  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

|                                             |                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audi-am,<br>audi-as,<br>audi-at,      | <i>I may hear.<br/>you may hear.<br/>he may hear.</i>   |
| Plur. Audi-āmus,<br>audi-ātis,<br>audi-ant, | <i>We may hear.<br/>ye may hear.<br/>they may hear.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might*.

|                                                |                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audī-rem,<br>audī-res,<br>audī-ret,      | <i>I might hear.<br/>you might hear.<br/>he might hear.</i>   |
| Plur. Audī-rēmus,<br>audī-rētis,<br>audī-rent, | <i>We might hear.<br/>ye might hear.<br/>they might hear.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have*.

|                                                      |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-ěrim,<br>audīv-ěris,<br>audīv-ěrit,      | <i>I may have heard.<br/>you may have heard.<br/>he may have heard.</i>   |
| Plur. Audīv-ěrimus,<br>audīv-ěritis,<br>audīv-ěrint, | <i>We may have heard.<br/>ye may have heard.<br/>they may have heard.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have*.

|                                                         |                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-issem,<br>audīv-isses,<br>audīv-isset,      | <i>I would have heard.<br/>you would have heard.<br/>he would have heard.</i>   |
| Plur. Audīv-issēmus,<br>audīv-issētis,<br>audīv-issent, | <i>We would have heard.<br/>ye would have heard.<br/>they would have heard.</i> |

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

|                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Sing. Auditū-rus sim,  | <i>I may be about to hear.</i>    |
| auditū-rus sis,        | <i>you may be about to hear.</i>  |
| auditū-rus sit,        | <i>he may be about to hear.</i>   |
| Plur. Auditū-ri simus, | <i>We may be about to hear.</i>   |
| auditū-ri sitis,       | <i>ye may be about to hear.</i>   |
| auditū-ri sint,        | <i>they may be about to hear.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Aud-īre, *to hear.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Audiv-isse, *to have heard.*

## Future Tense.

Auditū-rum esse, or fōre, *to be about to hear.*

## GERUNDS.

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| Audien-di,  | <i>of hearing.</i> |
| audien-do,  | <i>in hearing.</i> |
| audien-dum, | <i>to hear.</i>    |

## SUPINES.

|                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| Active.                   | Passive.                     |
| Audit-um, <i>to hear.</i> | Audit-u, <i>to be heard.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                           |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Present Tense.            | Future.                           |
| Audi-ens, <i>hearing.</i> | Auditū-rus, <i>about to hear.</i> |

IMPERSONAL VERBS are conjugated thus :

Present.

|                  |                                         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Dĕcet me,  | <i>It becomes me, or, I ought.</i>      |
| dĕcet te,        | <i>it becomes you, or, you ought.</i>   |
| dĕcet illum,     | <i>it becomes him, or, he ought.</i>    |
| Plur. Dĕcet nos, | <i>It becomes us, or, we ought.</i>     |
| dĕcet vos,       | <i>it becomes you, or, ye ought.</i>    |
| dĕcet illos,     | <i>it becomes them, or, they ought.</i> |

Imperfect.

Dĕcĕbat me,  
dĕcĕbat te, &c.

Like the third sing. of *moneo* ; and so on, through all the tenses.

~~~~~

DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in *OR* are thus declined :

1. Ām-or, ām-āris *vel* am-āre, amāt-us sum *vel** fui ;
am-āri ; amāt-us, aman-dus ; *to be loved.*
2. Mōn-ĕor, mon-ĕris *vel* mon-ĕre, mōnīt-us sum *vel*
fui ; mon-ĕri ; monit-us, monĕn-dus ; *to be advised.*
3. Rĕg-or, rĕg-ĕris *vel* reg-ĕre, rect-us sum *vel* fui ;
reg-i ; rectus, regĕn-dus ; *to be ruled.*
4. Aud-ior, aud-īris *vel* aud-īre, audīt-us sum *vel* fui ;
aud-īri ; audīt-us, audiĕn-dus ; *to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Amor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Āmor,	<i>I am loved.</i>
amāris, <i>v.</i> am-āre,	<i>you are loved.</i>
am-ātur,	<i>he is loved.</i>
Plur. Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved.</i>
am-āmīni,	<i>ye are loved.</i>
am-antur,	<i>they are loved.</i>

*uv** There are, however, very few instances (if any) of such forms as *matus fui* being used, by good authors, as the perfect tense, and equivalent to *v. oratus sum*.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing. Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved.</i>
am-ābāris, v. -ābāre,	<i>you were loved.</i>
am-ābātur,	<i>he was loved.</i>
Plur. Am-ābāmur,	<i>We were loved.</i>
am-ābāmīni,	<i>ye were loved.</i>
am-ābantur,	<i>they were loved.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us sum, <i>vel</i> fui,	<i>I have been loved.</i>
amāt-us es, v. fuisti,	<i>you have been loved.</i>
amāt-us est, v. fuit,	<i>he has been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i sūmus, v. fuīmus,	<i>We have been loved.</i>
amāt-i estis, v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been loved.</i>
amāt-i sunt, fuērunt, v. -ēre,	<i>they have been loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Amāt-us ěram, v. fuěram,	<i>I had been loved.</i>
amāt-us ěras, v. fuěras,	<i>you had been loved.</i>
amāt-us ěrat, v. fuěrat,	<i>he had been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i ěrāmus, v. fuěrāmus,	<i>We had been loved.</i>
amat-i ěrātis, v. fuěrātis,	<i>ye had been loved.</i>
amāt-i ěrant, v. fuěrant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved.</i>
am-ābĕris, v. -ābĕre,	<i>you will be loved.</i>
am-ābĭtur,	<i>he will be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-ābĭmur,	<i>We shall be loved.</i>
am-ābĭmini,	<i>ye will be loved.</i>
am-ābuntur,	<i>they will be loved.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us ěro, v. fuěro,	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
amāt-us ěris, v. fuěris,	<i>you will have been loved.</i>
amāt-us ěrit, v. fuěrit,	<i>he will have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i ěrĭmus, v. fuěrĭmus,	<i>We shall have been loved.</i>
amāt-i ěrĭtis, v. fuěrĭtis,	<i>ye will have been loved.</i>
amāt-i ěrunt, v. fuěrint,	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Am-āre, am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved.</i>
am-ātor,	<i>let him be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-āmīni, am-āmīnor,	<i>Be ye loved.</i>
ām-antor,	<i>let them be loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Amer,	<i>I may be loved.</i>
am-ēris, v. am-ēre,	<i>you may be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved.</i>
am-ēmīni,	<i>ye may be loved.</i>
am-entur,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved.</i>
am-ārēris, v. ārēre,	<i>you might be loved.</i>
am-ārētur,	<i>he might be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-ārēmur,	<i>We might be loved.</i>
am-ārēmini,	<i>ye might be loved.</i>
am-ētur,	<i>he may be loved.</i>
am-ārentur,	<i>they might be loved.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us sim, v. fuerim,	<i>I may have been loved.</i>
amāt-us sis, v. fueris,	<i>you may have been loved.</i>
amāt-us sit, v. fuerit,	<i>he may have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i simus, v. fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved.</i>
amāt-i sitis, v. fueritis,	<i>ye may have been loved.</i>
amāt-i sint, v. fuerint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us essem, v. fuissem,	<i>I would have been loved.</i>
amāt-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been loved.</i>
amāt-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i essēmus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>We would have been loved.</i>
amāt-i essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye would have been loved.</i>
amāt-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Am-āri, *to be loved.*

Perfect. and Pluperfect Tense.

Amāt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been loved.*

Future Tense.

Amāt-um īri, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Amāt-us, *loved, or, being loved.*

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Aman-dus, *to be loved.*



SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Mōn-eor,	<i>I am advised.</i>
mon-ēris, <i>v.</i> -ēre,	<i>you are advised.</i>
mon-ētur,	<i>he is advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēmur,	<i>We are advised.</i>
mon-ēmīni,	<i>ye are advised.</i>
mon-entur,	<i>they are advised.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing. Mon-ēbar,	<i>I was advised.</i>
mon-ēbāris, <i>v.</i> -ēbāre,	<i>you were advised.</i>
mon-ēbātur,	<i>he was advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēbāmur,	<i>We were advised.</i>
mon-ēbāmīni,	<i>ye were advised.</i>
mon-ēbantur,	<i>they were advised.</i>



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Mon-ear,	<i>I may be advised.</i>
mon-eāris, v. mon-eāre,	<i>you may be advised.</i>
mon-eātur,	<i>he may be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-eāmur,	<i>We may be advised.</i>
mon-eāmīni,	<i>ye may be advised.</i>
mon-eantur,	<i>they may be advised.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Mon-ērer,	<i>I might be advised.</i>
mon-ērēris, v. -ērēre,	<i>you might be advised.</i>
mon-ērētur,	<i>he might be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ērēmur,	<i>We might be advised.</i>
mon-ērēmīni,	<i>ye might be advised.</i>
mon-ērentur,	<i>they might be advised.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us sim, v. fuërim,	<i>I may have been advised.</i>
monīt-us sis, v. fuëris,	<i>you may have been advised.</i>
monīt-us sit, v. fuërit,	<i>he may have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i sīmus, v. fuërimus,	<i>We may have been advised.</i>
monīt-i sītis, v. fuëritis,	<i>ye may have been advised.</i>
monīt-i sint, v. fuërint,	<i>they may have been advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us essem, v. fuisset,	<i>I would have been advised.</i>
monīt-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been advised.</i>
monīt-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i essēmus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>We would have been advised.</i>
monīt-i essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye would have been advised.</i>
monīt-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been advised.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mon-ēri, *to be advised.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Monit-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been advised.*

Future Tense.

Monit-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Monit-us, *advised, or, being advised.*

The Participle in *dus*, or the gerundive.

Monen-dus, *to be advised.*

 THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕgor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Rĕg-or,	<i>I am ruled.</i>
	reg-ĕris, <i>v.</i> reg-ĕre,	<i>you are ruled.</i>
	reg-ĭtur,	<i>he is ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-ĭmur,	<i>We are ruled.</i>
	reg-ĭmĭni,	<i>ye are ruled.</i>
	reg-untur,	<i>they are ruled.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing.	Reg-ĕbar,	<i>I was ruled.</i>
	reg-ĕbāris, <i>v.</i> ĕbāre,	<i>you were ruled.</i>
	reg-ĕbātur,	<i>he was ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-ĕbāmur,	<i>We were ruled.</i>
	reg-ĕbāmĭni,	<i>ye were ruled.</i>
	reg-ĕbantur,	<i>they were ruled.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us sum, <i>v.</i> fui,	<i>I have been ruled.</i>
	rect-us es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>you have been ruled.</i>
	rect-us est, <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he has been ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rect-i sūmus, <i>v.</i> fuīmus,	<i>We have been ruled.</i>
	rect-i estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>ye have been ruled.</i>
	rect-i sunt, fuērunt, <i>v.</i> fuēre,	<i>they have been ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Rect-us ěram, v. fuěram,	<i>I had been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěras, v. fuěras,	<i>you had been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěrat, v. fuěrat,	<i>he had been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i ěrāmus, v. fuěrāmus,	<i>We had been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěrātis, v. fuěrātis,	<i>ye had been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěrant, v. fuěrant,	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Reg-ar,	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>
reg-ěris, v. reg-ěre,	<i>you will be ruled.</i>
reg-ětur,	<i>he will be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ěmur,	<i>We shall be ruled.</i>
reg-ěmĭni,	<i>ye will be ruled.</i>
reg-entur,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Rect-us ěro, v. fuěro,	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěris, v. fuěris,	<i>you will have been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěrit, v. fuěrit,	<i>he will have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i ěrĭmus v. fuěrĭmus,	<i>We shall have been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěrĭtis, v. fuěrĭtis,	<i>ye will have been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěrunt, v. fuěrint,	<i>they will have been ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Rěg-ěre, reg-ĭtor,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>
reg-ĭtor,	<i>let him be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ĭmĭni, reg-ĭmĭnor,	<i>Be ye ruled.</i>
reg-untor,	<i>let them be ruled.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Reg-ar,	<i>I may be ruled.</i>
reg-āris, v. reg-āre,	<i>you may be ruled.</i>
reg-ātur,	<i>he may be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-āmur,	<i>We may be ruled.</i>
reg-āmĭni,	<i>ye may be ruled.</i>
reg-antur,	<i>they may be ruled.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Reg-ĕrer,	<i>I might be ruled.</i>
reg-ĕrĕris, <i>v.</i> reg-ĕrĕre,	<i>you might be ruled.</i>
reg-ĕrĕtur,	<i>he might be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ĕrĕmur,	<i>We might be ruled.</i>
reg-ĕrĕmĭni,	<i>ye might be ruled.</i>
reg-ĕrentur,	<i>they might be ruled.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Rect-us sim, <i>v.</i> fuĕrim,	<i>I may have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sis, <i>v.</i> fuĕris,	<i>you may have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sit, <i>v.</i> fuĕrit,	<i>he may have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i sĭmus, <i>v.</i> fuĕrĭmus,	<i>We may have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sĭtis, <i>v.</i> fuĕrĭtis,	<i>ye may have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sint, <i>v.</i> fuĕrint,	<i>they may have been ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Rect-us essem, <i>v.</i> fuisssem,	<i>I would have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esses, <i>v.</i> fuisses,	<i>you would have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esset, <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>he would have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i essĕmus, <i>v.</i> fuissĕmus,	<i>We would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essĕtis, <i>v.</i> fuissĕtis,	<i>ye would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essent, <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>they would have been ruled.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Reg-i, *to be ruled.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Rect-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

Future Tense.

Rect-um ĭri, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Rect-us, *ruled, or, being ruled.*

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Regen-dus, *to be ruled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audior.
INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Aud-ior,	<i>I am heard.</i>
aud-īris, v. aud-īre,	<i>you are heard.</i>
aud-ītur,	<i>he is heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-īmur,	<i>We are heard.</i>
aud-īmīni,	<i>ye are heard.</i>
aud-iuntur,	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing. Aud-iēbar,	<i>I was heard.</i>
aud-iēbāris, v. aud-iēbāre,	<i>you were heard.</i>
aud-iēbātur,	<i>he was heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iēbāmur,	<i>We were heard.</i>
aud-iēbāmīni,	<i>ye were heard.</i>
aud-iēbantur,	<i>they were heard.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us sum, v. fui,	<i>I have been heard.</i>
audīt-us es, v. fuisti,	<i>you have been heard.</i>
audīt-us est, v. fuit,	<i>he has been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i sūmus, v. fuīmus,	<i>We have been heard.</i>
audīt-i estis, v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sunt, fuērunt, v. fuēre,	<i>they have been heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Audīt-us ēram, v. fuēram,	<i>I had been heard.</i>
audīt-us ēras, v. fuēras,	<i>you had been heard.</i>
audīt-us ērat, v. fuērat,	<i>he had been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i ērāmus, v. fuērāmus,	<i>We had been heard.</i>
audīt-i ērātis, v. fuērātis,	<i>ye had been heard.</i>
audīt-i ērant, v. fuērant,	<i>they had been heard.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Aud-iar,	<i>I shall be heard.</i>
aud-iēris, v. aud-iēre,	<i>you will be heard.</i>
aud-iētur,	<i>he will be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iēmur,	<i>We shall be heard.</i>
aud-iēmīni,	<i>ye will be heard.</i>
aud-ientur,	<i>they will be heard.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us ěro, <i>v.</i> fuěro,	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
audīt-us ěris, <i>v.</i> fuěris,	<i>you will have been heard.</i>
audīt-us ěrit, <i>v.</i> fuěrit,	<i>he will have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i ěrimus, <i>v.</i> fuěrimus,	<i>We shall have been heard.</i>
audīt-i ěritis, <i>v.</i> fuěritis,	<i>ye will have been heard.</i>
audīt-i ěrunt, <i>v.</i> fuěrint,	<i>they will have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Aud-īre, aud-ītor,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>
audi-tor,	<i>let him be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-īmīni, aud-īmīnor,	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
aud-iuntor,	<i>let them be heard.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Aud-iar,	<i>I may be heard.</i>
aud-iāris, <i>v.</i> aud-iāre,	<i>you may be heard.</i>
aud-iātur,	<i>he may be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iāmur,	<i>We may be heard.</i>
aud-iāmīni,	<i>ye may be heard.</i>
aud-iantur,	<i>they may be heard.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might be.*

Sing. Aud-īrer,	<i>I might be heard.</i>
aud-īrēris, <i>v.</i> aud-īrēre,	<i>you might be heard.</i>
aud-īrētur,	<i>he might be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-īrēmur,	<i>We might be heard.</i>
aud-īrēmīni,	<i>ye might be heard.</i>
aud-īrentur,	<i>they might be heard.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us sim, <i>v.</i> fuěrim,	<i>I may have been heard.</i>
audīt-us sis, <i>v.</i> fuěris,	<i>you may have been heard.</i>
audīt-us sit, <i>v.</i> fuěrit,	<i>he may have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i simus, <i>v.</i> fuěrimus,	<i>We may have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sitis, <i>v.</i> fuěritis,	<i>ye may have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sint, <i>v.</i> fuěrint,	<i>they may have been heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have been.*

Sing.	Audīt-us essem, v. fuissem,	<i>I would have been heard.</i>
	audīt-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been heard.</i>
	audīt-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been heard.</i>
Plur.	Audīt-iessēmus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>We would have been heard.</i>
	audīt-i essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye would have been heard.</i>
	audīt-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Aud-īri, *to be heard.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Audīt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been heard.*

Future Tense.

Audīt-um īri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Audīt-us, *heard, or, being heard.*

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Audien-dus, *to be heard.*



The two Participles future, in *rus* and in *dus*, are often so combined with the tenses of *sum*, that a new conjugation called the *periphrastic* conjugation is formed in the following manner:—

ACTIVE.

Pres.	Amaturus sum, etc.	<i>I am about to love.</i>
Imperf.	Amaturus eram, etc.	<i>I was about to love.</i>
Perf.	Amaturus fui, etc.	<i>I have been about to love.</i>
Pluperf.	Amaturus fueram, etc.	<i>I had been about to love.</i>
1st Fut.	Amaturus ero, etc.	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
2nd Fut.	Amaturus fuero, etc.	<i>I shall have been about to love.</i>



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

CERTAIN verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following:—

1. Possum, pŏtes, pŏtui, posse, pŏtens :* *to be able.*
2. Vŏlo, vis, vŏlui, velle; vŏlendi, vŏlendo, vŏlendum; vŏlens : *to be willing.*
3. Nŏlo, nonvis, nŏlui, nolle; nŏlendi, nŏlendo, nŏlendum; nŏlens : *to be unwilling.*
4. Mālo, māvis, mālui, malle; mālendi, mālendo, mālendum; mālens : *to be more willing, or, to have rather,*
5. Ědo, ědis, *vel* ěs, ědi, ědĕre *vel* esse : ědendi, ědendo, ědendum; ěsum, ěsu; ědens, ěsurus : *to eat.*
6. Fĕro, fers, tŭli, ferre; fĕrendi, fĕrendo, fĕrendum; lātum, lātu; fĕrens, lātŭrus : *to bear, or, suffer.*
7. Fĭo, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fĭĕri; factus, fĕciendus : *to be made, or, done.*
8. Fĕror, ferris *vel* ferre, lātus sum *vel* fui, ferri; lātus, fĕrendus : *to be borne, or, suffered.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Possum,	pŏtes,	pŏtest,	Possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Vŏlo,	vis,	vult,	vŏlŭmus,	vultis,	vŏlunt.
Nŏlo,	nonvis,	nonvult,	nŏlŭmus,	nonvultis,	nŏlunt.
Mālo,	māvis,	māvult,	mālŭmus,	māvultis,	mālunt.
Ědo,	ědis, <i>v. es,</i>	ědit, <i>v. est,</i>	ědĭmus,	ědĭtis, <i>v. estis,</i>	ědunt.
Fĕro,	fers,	fert,	fĕrĭmus,	fertis,	fĕrunt.
Fĭo,	fis,	fit,	fĭmus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Fĕror,	ferris, <i>v. ferre,</i>	fertur,	fĕrĭmur,	ferĭmĭni,	feruntur.

**Potensis*, however, only actually used as an adjective, in the sense of *powerful*.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I was able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Põt-eram,	ěras	ěrat,	ěramus,	ěrātis,	ěrant.
Völe-bam,	} bas,	} bat,	} bāmus,	} bātis,	} bant.
Nölē-bam,					
Mālē-bam,					
Ĕdē-bam,					
Fěre-bam,					
Fīe-bam,	} bāris, <i>v.</i> bāre, bātur,	} bāmur,	} bāmīni,	} bantur.	
Fěre-bar,					

3. Perfect Tense.—*I have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pötu-i,	} isti,	} it,	} ĩmus,	} istis,	} ěrunt, <i>vel</i> ěre.
Völu-i,					
Nölu-i,					
Mālu-i,					
Ĕd-i,					
Tül-i,	} sum, es, est,	} i sũmus, estis, sunt, <i>v.</i> fuěrunt,	} ".	} <i>v.</i>	} <i>v.</i>
Fact-us,					
Lāt-us,	} fui; fuisti; fuit;	} fuĩmus; fuistis;			} fuěre.

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I had been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pötu-eram,	} ěras,	} ěrat,	} ěramus,	} ěrātis,	} ěrant.
Völu-eram,					
Nölu-eram,					
Mālu-eram,					
Ĕd-eram,					
Tül-eram,	} ěram, ěras, ěrat,	} i ěramus,	} ěrātis,	} ěrant,	
Fāct-us,					
Lāt-us,	} fuěram; -ěras; -ěrat;	} fuěramus;	} fuěrātis;	} fuěrant.	

5. First Future Tense.—*I shall, or, will be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pöt-ěro, Völ-am, Nöl-am, Māl-am, Ĕd-am, Fěr-am, Fī-am, Fěr-ar,	ěris, es, ěris, <i>v.</i> ěre,	ěrit, et, ětur,	ěřimus, ěmus, ěmur,	ěřitis, ětis, ěmīni,	ěrunt. ent. entur.

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*I shall have been able.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pötuěro, Völuěro, Nöluěro, Māluěro, Ĕděro, Tülěro, Factus, Lātus,	ěris, ěro, ěris, <i>v. v.</i> fuěro, fuěris,	ěrit, ěrit, ěrit, <i>v. v.</i> fuěrit,	ěřimus, Facti, Lati,	ěřitis, ěřimus, ěřitis, ěrunt, <i>v. v. v.</i> fuěřimus, fuěřitis, fuěřint.	ěrint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo, and malo*, have no Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—*be thou unwilling, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nōli, nōlīto ;	nōlīte, nōlītōte.
Ĕde, ědīto, <i>vel</i> Es, esto ; ědīto, <i>vel</i> , esto ;	ědīte, ědītōte, <i>vel</i> , este, estote ; ědunto.
Fer, fertō ; fertō ;	ferte, fertote ; ferunto.
Fi, fito ; fito ;	fite, fitote ; fiunto.
Fer-re, -tor ; fertor ;	fěrīmīn-i, -or ; feruntor.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I may be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Poss-im, Věl-im, Nōl-im, Māl-im,	} is,	it,	īmus,	ītis,	int.
Ĕd-am, Fěr-am, Fī-am,					
Fěr-ar, -āris, <i>v. āre</i> ; ātur,	} as,	at,	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
			āmur,	āmīni,	antur.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I might be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Poss-em, Vell-em, Noll-em, Mall-em, Ĕdēr-em, <i>vel,</i> Ess-em, Ferr-em, Fīēr-em, Ferr-er,	} es,	et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
	-ēris, <i>v. ēre</i> ; ētur,		ēmur,	ēmīni,	entur.

3. Perfect Tense.—*I may have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtu-ěrim, Vōlu-ěrim, Nōlu-ěrim, Mālu-ěrim, Ĕd-ěrim, Tūl-ěrim,	} ěris, ěrit,		ěřimus,	ěřitis,	ěrint.
Fact-us,					
Lāt-us,	{ sim, sis, sit, <i>v. v. v.</i>		i sīmus, <i>v.</i>	sītis, <i>v.</i>	sint, <i>v.</i>
	fuě-rim; ris; rit;		fuěřimus;	fuěřitis;	fuěrint.

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I should have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
Pötu-issem, Völu-issem, Nölu-issem, Mālu-issem, Ēd-issem, Tül-issem,	}	isses, isset,	issemus, issētis, issent.	
Fact-us, Iāt-us,				
	fuissem; isses; isset;	fuissēmus; fuissētis; fuissent.		

5. Future Tense.—*I may be about to eat, &c.*

Ēsurus Lāturus	}	sim, sis, sit,		i sīmus, sītis, sint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—*to be able, &c.*

Posse.	Ēdēre, <i>vel</i> , esse.
Velle.	Ferre.
Nolle.	Fīēri.
Malle.	Ferri.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—*to have been able, &c.*

Pötuisse.	Ēdisse.
Völuisse.	Tülisse.
Nöluisse.	Factum esse, <i>vel</i> , fuisse.
Māluisse.	Lātum esse, <i>vel</i> , fuisse.

Future Tense.—*to be about to eat, &c.*

Ēsūrum esse.	Factum iri.
Lātūrum esse.	Lātum iri.

Obs. *Possum, volo, nolo, malo*, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive mood.

· *EO, to go*, is also a verb irregular.

Eo, is, *īvi, īre, eundi, eundo, eundum, ĩtum, ĩtu, iens, ĩtūrus.

Indic. M. } *Sing.* *Eo*, is, it. *Pl.* *Imus, ĩtis, eunt.*
Pres. T. }

* In all the compounds of *eo*, as *redeo, abeo*, etc. this tense is almost invariably found *ii*, not *ivi*; as, *rediī, abiī* etc.

Imp. Tense. Sing. Ibam, ības, ībat. *Pl.*-āmus, -ātis, -ant.

Perf. Tense. Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, ivērunt, *v.* ēre.

Pluperf. Tense. Ivēram, -as, -at; -āmus, -ātis, -ant.

First Fut. Sing. Ibo, ībis, ībit. *Pl.*-īmus, -ītis, -unt.

2nd Fut. Ivēro, ivēris, ivērit; ivērīmus, ivērītis, ivērint.

Imp. M. Sing. I, ito; ito. *Pl.* ite, itote; eunto.

Potent. M. Pres. Sing. Eam, eas, eat. *Pl.* Eāmus, eātis, Imperf. Irem, etc. [eant.

Perf. Ivērim, etc.

Pluperf. Ivissem, etc.

Fut. Iturus sim, etc.

Gerunds; Eundi, eundo, eundum.

Participle Pres. T. Iens, *gen.* eūntis.

Participle Future, Itūrus.*

Obs. In like manner are the compounds of *Eo* declined, also *queo*, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable; except that these last two have no Imperative mood or Gerunds.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

VERBS are called *defective*, that have only some particular Tenses and Persons; as,

AIO, *I say*.

Ind. M. Pres. T. S. Aio, ais, ait. *Pl.* ——— Aiunt.

Imp. T. Sing. Aiē-bam, -bas, -bat. *Pl.* -bamus, -batis, -bant.

Perf. Tense. Sing. — Ait.

Sub. or Potent. M. Pres. T. Sing.—Aias, aiat. *Pl.* aiant.

Particip. Pres. Tense. Aiens.

FARI, *to speak*.

Pres. 3d. Sing. Fātur.

Perf. Fātus sum, es, etc.

Pluperf. Fātus eram, etc.

First Fut. Fābor—no other person.

* *Eo* has no passive voice except in the third sing. used as an impersonal verb, as has been shewn above (p. 57,) and the passive participle in *dus*, or gerundive *eundus*; but some of its compounds, *ādeo*, to approach, *prætereo*, to pass by, &c. have a passive voice, formed regularly from the active; as, *adeor*, *adiris*, *aditur*, etc. imperf. *adibar*, etc.

Imper. Fāre.

Gerunds. Fandi, Fando.

Supine. Fatu. — *Part. Perf.* Fatus. — *Part. Pass.*
[Fandus.]

AVE, *Hail!*

Imper. M. Sing.—Āve, āvēto.—*Pl.* Āvēte, āvētōte.—
Infinitive Mood. Āvēre.

SALVE, *Hail!*

Indicat. M. Future T. Sing. — Salvēbis.

Imper. M. S.—Salve, salveto.—*Pl.* Salvēte, salvētōte.
Infinitive M. Salvēre.

CEDO, *Give me.*

Imper. M. Sing.—Cĕdo.—*Pl.*—Cette.*

QUÆSO, *I pray.*

Indic. M. Pres. T. S. Quæso. *Pl.* Quæsŭmus.

INQUAM, *I say.*

Ind. M. Pres. T. S. Inquam, -quis, -quit. *Pl.* In-
quŭmus, inquŭtis, inquiunt.

Preterimp. T. S.—Inquiebat. *Pl.*—Inquiebant.

Preterp. T. S. —Inquisti.

Future T. Sing. —Inquies, inquiet.

Cæpi, I have begun, *mĕmĭni*, I remember, *nōvi*, I know, *odi*, I hate, are perfects of obsolete presents, (except *novi*, which is also the perfect of *nosco*,) and have these tenses only which are derived from the perfect. Their pluperfect tense has the sense of the imperfect; i.e. *memineram*, “I did remember,” not, “I had remembered,” etc. and the second future has the sense of the first future; as, *odero* “I shall hate,” not “I shall have hated.”

Cæpi,	Mĕmĭni,	(So, ōdi, nōvi.)
Cæpisti,	Mĕmĭnisti,	
Cæpit,	Mĕmĭnit,	
Cæpĭmus,	Mĕmĭnĭmus,	
Cæpistis,	Mĕmĭnistis,	
Cæperunt, v. ĕre.	Mĕmĭnĕrunt, v. ĕre.	

* Found only in the oldest writers.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is a part of speech which governs a case, and which expresses the relation of nouns to one another, or to verbs; as, *iter per Italiam*, a journey through Italy; *exit e domo*, he goes out of the house.

These Prepositions have an *Accusative* case after them :

Ad, to.

Adversum, Adversus, against, towards.

Ante, before.

Apud, at, or near.

Circa, circum, about.

Circiter, about (of time, or number.)

Cis, citra, on this side,

Contra, against.

Erga, towards.

Extra, without.

Infra, beneath, below.

Inter, between, or among.

Intra, within.

Juxta, beside, or near to.

Ob, on account of, before, (as *ob oculos*, before the eyes.)

P̄enes, in the power of.

Per, through.

Pōne, behind.

Post, after.

Præter, besides, except, before (as, *præter cæteros*, before others.)

Prōpe, (and compar. and superl. *prōpius, proxime*) nigh, or near to.

Propter, on account of, near to.

S̄cundum, according to.

Supra, above.

Trans, on the further side.

Versus, towards.

Ultra, beyond.

The Prepositions following have an *Ablative* case after them :

A, (and before vowels *ab*)* from, by.

Absque, without.

Coram, before, or in presence of.

Cum, with.

De, from, concerning.

E, ex, from, out of, in (as *ex ordine*, in order.)

Præ, † before, in comparison of, on account of.

Pro, for, in front of.

S̄ine, without.

T̄enus, up to, as far as. ‡

* Before *te*, *abs* is also used in the same sense by Cicero, and before other words by Terence and older writers. It is never used in poetry.

† *Præ* signifies of *place*, with verbs of motion only, and with pronouns.

‡ *Tenus* is used also with a genitive, when the noun is in the plural number; and once by Livy with a noun in the singular; *Corcyræ t̄enus*, as far as Corecyra.

The prepositions *versus* and *tenus* are always, *penes* sometimes, put after the noun governed by them: so, when the noun governed by them is the relative, *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*, are also placed sometimes after their case: when *cum* is joined with *me*, *nobis*, *te*, *vobis*, *se*, or the relative, it is put after them, and united with them so as to make one word; as, *mecum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum*, etc.

The Prepositions following have either an Accusative or an Ablative case after them:

In, for *into*, signifying motion *towards*, *against*, *over*, etc. has an accusative case; as, *Eo in urbem*, I go into the city.

In, meaning "in," has the ablative case; as, *In illo spes est*, my hope is in him.

Sub, after verbs of motion, governs an accusative case, and also when it denotes time; as, *Mittitur sub jugum*, he is sent under the yoke; *sub noctem*, about nightfall. When it means "under," it governs an ablative case; as, *Sub terrâ*, under the earth.

Subter, under, beneath, governs the accusative; the ablative only in poetry; (it is very rarely used at all.)

Süper, when it means "on, above, besides," governs the accusative case; as, *Süper terram*, above the earth: when it means "concerning, about," it governs the ablative; as, *Rögütans multa süper Priamo*, asking many things about Priam. Besides these regular prepositions, some adverbs are used occasionally as prepositions, especially in poetry.

With the Accusative:

Usque (properly, and more usually, in good prose invariably, *usque ad*,) as far as.

With the Ablative:

Pälam, in the presence of.

Pröcul, (properly, and more usually, *procul a*,) far from.

Simul, (only poetically for *simul cum*,) together with.

With the Accusative or Ablative:

Clam, without the knowledge of, (the accusative, however, is very rare and antiquated.)

OF AN INTERJECTION.

AN INTERJECTION is a part of speech which betokens a sudden motion of the mind, be it grief, or joy, or other passion.

THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three ConCORDS, or Agreements, in Latin:

1. Between the nominative case and the verb.
2. Between the substantive and the adjective.
3. Between the antecedent and the relative.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

A VERB agrees with its nominative case in number and person.

In order to find out the nominative case, ask the question *who*, or *what?* with the verb; and the word that answers to the question, is the nominative case to the verb; as, *who reads? who regard not?*

The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not,

^a*Præceptor* ^b*legit*, ^a*vos* ^{verò} ^b*negligitis*.

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a neuter substantive in the nominative, in which case the verb agrees with that, as if it were a noun; as,

Diluculò ^a*surgere saluberrimum* ^b*est*,

To rise betimes in the morning is most wholesome.

When two or more substantives are so joined in one sentence, that the verb depends on both or on all of them, the verb is usually put in the plural number, and agrees especially with the nominative case of the most worthy person: * when, however, the nouns denote things, not persons, the verb is often kept in the singular number; as, *Ego et tu sumus in tuto*, I and you are in safety: *Cùm tempus necessitasque postulat*, when time and necessity require.

* In grammatical language, the first person is reckoned more worthy than the second, and the second than the third.

Sometimes also a noun of multitude, (that is, a noun expressing more persons or things than one,) though in the singular number itself, is followed by a verb in the plural number; as, *Turba ruunt*, the crowd rushes on.

When the nominative case to the verb is a personal pronoun, it is usually omitted in Latin, unless particular emphasis be desired; as, He governs France, *Regit Galliam*: I am wiser than you, *Ego sum te sapientior*.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

The adjective agrees with its substantive in case, gender, and number; as,

^a*Amicus* ^b*certus in a re* ^b*incertá cernitur*,
A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

When two or more substantives come together in one sentence, and have one adjective referring to all of them, the adjective is put in the plural number, and as to gender agrees with the substantive of the most worthy gender, (the masculine being accounted more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine more worthy than the neuter.) But, when the nouns denote things, the adjective is often put in the neuter; when they denote both persons and things, the adjective may either agree with the noun denoting the person, or be put in the neuter gender; as, *Mihi pater et mater mortui sunt*, my father and mother are dead: *Ira et avaritia potentia sunt*, anger and avarice are powerful.

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a noun of the neuter gender, and the adjective agrees with it as if it were such a noun; and sometimes an entire sentence supplies the place of the substantive, and the adjective which is applied to it is put in the neuter gender; as, *Errare humanum est*, to err is human.

Sometimes, when persons are denoted by neuter substantives, the adjective, nevertheless, is put in the

masculine or feminine gender ; as, *Millia triginta servōrum capti sunt*, thirty thousand slaves were taken.

When in English the word *man*, or *thing*, is put with an adjective, you may in Latin leave out the substantive, and put the adjective in the masculine or neuter gender ; as,

Multi falluntur, many men are deceived.

Multa me impediērunt, many things have hindered me.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

WHEN you have a relative, ask this question, *who*, or *what*? with the verb ; and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the antecedent to the relative.

The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person ; as,

^a *Vir sapit*, ^b *qui pauca loquitur*,

The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

If the relative refers to two antecedents, or more, then it is put in the plural number ; and if they be of different persons, the relative agrees with the antecedent of the more worthy person ; as, *Ego et tu qui ěrāmus dōmi*, I and you who were at home.

Sometimes a sentence supplies the place of the antecedent, and in this case the relative is put in the neuter gender ; as, *In tempōre vēni, quod rĕrum omnium est prĭmum*, I came in time, which is the most important thing of all.

When the relative is placed between two substantives, to both of which it refers, it commonly agrees with the latter ; as, *Anĭmal quem vōcāmus hōmĭnem*, the animal which we call man.

**PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS,
QUÆ GENUS,
AS IN PRÆSENTI,
SYNTAXIS,
ET PROSODIA.**



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Ut felis, vulpes ; et piscium, ut ostrea, cētus, 30
Dicta epicæna, quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.
Multa etiam commune dabunt genus ; ut lēpus, anser,
Vespertīlio, mus, grus, bos, cānis, atque ělēphantus :
Fæmineumque mari jungunt sus, tīgris, et anguis,
Et serpens, dāmæque, et egentēs lumine talpæ. 35

IV. DECLENSION I.

As, es, mascula erunt ; a, e, inflexio prima,
Fæminei generis, prohibet nisi sensus, habebit.
Mas Bōreas, sātrāpes ; muliebris lītēra, Circe ;
Sed mas scriba genus, sic scurra, athlēta, lānista.

V. DECLENSION II.

Um neutrale, us et er dat mas plerumque secunda. 40
Sic regnum neutrum, dōmīnus mas atque māgister :
Sed quæ dicta supra sunt, excipienda legenti
Pauca dabunt, nam arbor mālus muliebris, et urbis
Nomen Abūdus erit, sic alvus, hūmus, cōlus, atque
Carbasus, et vannus ; sic Nilo nota phāselus ; 45
Pauca etiam occurrent Græcis deducta, pāp̄yrus,
Antīdōtus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, et illa
Os breve quot claudit, ceu Dēlos, Sestos, et Isthmos.
Sed vīrus, pēlāgus neutralia, et adjice vulgus,
Interdum quamvis hoc inter mascula ponas ; 50
Non genus est ullum quo non pēnus invenietur.

VI. DECLENSION III.—MASCULINES.

Tertiu quas voces lectori inflexio reddit
Crede mares, si claudit or, os, er, o quoque rectum,
Vel quas es fīnit, crescitque quibus genitivus.
Sic hōnor, atque hēros, crāter, sermoque, tāpesque ; 55
At soror atque uxor muliebria semper, et arbor ;

*Sed cor, marmor, ādor neutralia semper, et æquor.
Sic est fæminei generis cos, dosque, sed os seu
Oris habet sive ossis erit neutrale, chaosque
Et mēlos, atque alia à linguā deducta Pelasgā. 60
Mas tūber est fructus, sed erit muliebris ut arbor;
Linter communis; neutrum ver, verber, et ūber,
Atque cādāver, ĩter, spinther, quibus adjice tuber.
Atque per er finita notant quot nomina plantas.
Excipias quoque, lector, hyperdissyllabon in do, 65
Et quot io claudit verbo deducta, libīdo,
Formīdoque velut; sic dictio, lectio; porro
Est cāro atque ēcho atque Argo et muliebris ĩmāgo;
Cūm notat affectum muliebris rite cūpīdo est;
Et tamen hoc vates interdum in mascula cogunt. 70
Pauca per es finita licet crescentia disces
Fæminei generis; merges, mercesque, quiesque,
Et tēgēs atque sēges; quādrūpes communis, et āles,
Atque obses, cōmēs, atque hospes, quibus adjice princeps.*

VII. DECLENSION III.—FEMININES.

*Omne quod exit in as, ĩs, ŷs, aus, x, es quoque, quando 75
Non genitivo crescit, erit muliebre; superque
Præbet idem genus s liquidā præeunte memento.
Sic piētas, fraus, atque chlām̄ys, nāvisque, rātisque,
Pax, rādix, nūbes, et hyems, mors; excipe pauca;
Mas erit as assis, compostaque; mas ělēphasque, 80
Et quidquid Græcum genitivo habet antis, ut Atlas,
Atque gīgas, ādāmas; e sensu vas vādis est mas;
Vas vāsis neutrum, sic fas neutrale, nefasque.
Multa quoque is finita videbis mascula; pulvis,
Et pollis, cucumis, sanguis, lapis, amnis, et axis, 85
Glis, caulis, cassis, cūm non crescit genitivo,
(Cassis enim, venit à quo cassīdis, est muliebre,)
Collis, fascis, follis, funis, pestis, et ensis,
Ignis, pānis, piscis, postis, et adjice mensis,
Orbis, sentis, torris, vectis, vermis, et unguis, 90
Nātālis; numero et primo quæ rarius exstant,*

Annāles, *rapidisque jūgālībus adde mōlāres.*
Quinetiam cernes communia pauca, cānālis,
Et scrōbis, et torquis, callis, fīnis, cīnis; etsi
Hæc duo plurali apparent tibi mascula tantum: 95
Et, quoniam nunc vir nunc fœmina dicitur, hostis
Est commune genus, cīvis, testis, pātruelis.
Est data lex potior cur mas Hālys exstet, et Othrys.
Mascula nulla es non crescens dat, ācīnāce dempto;
At vātes commune, vēpres etiam, atque pālumbes. 100
Quæ Græca ax finit, sunt plurima mascula, thōrax,
Et cordax, anthrax; sic ex quæ plurima claudit,
Qualis āpex, cōdex, cīmex, cortexque, cūlexque,
Grex, vertex, mūrex, pūlex, caudexque, sīlexque:
Pauca per ix finita, cālix, fornix, ita phœnix; 105
Græcaque in yx, ut ōnyx, et ōryx, bombyxque, cālyxque:
Sic quincunx, septunx, et cætera mascula: porro
Mascula ādeps, dens, fons, mons, pons, hūdropsque,
chālybsque;
Gryps, torrens, ōriensque, rūdensque, bīdensque, tri-
densque:
Mascula ěpopsque mĕropsque, et stirps communis
habetur. 110

VIII. DECLENSION III.—NEUTERS

Quæ claudunt a, e, i, y, c, neutra leguntur.
l, n, t, ar, ur, us; videas exempla; poēma,
Et māre, mīsŷ, sīnāpi, ālec, lac, mel, ānīmalque,
Carmen, et adde cāput, lāquear, jĕcur, adjice tempus.
Mascula sol, mūgil; sic sal plerumque, sālesque 115
Plurali semper.—Communia præsul et exul,
Atque vīgil; fīdīcen, ren, pecten mascula; et addas
Deducta à Græcā linguā paucissima, delphin,
Līchen, et pæan, primāque è lege Cīthæron,
Sindon, atque īcon muliebria sunt, et Āmazon, 120
Et numero Aīcyones quæ primo rarius exstant:
Significans sociūm par mas, mas turtur, et augur,
Fur, vultur, sic furfur: in us muliebria pauca,

*Ut virtus, incus, tellus, p̄alus, atque j̄ventus,
Atque p̄cus p̄cūdis, p̄cōris dans accipe neutrum.* 125

IX. DECLENSION IV.

*U neutrum, ut cornu ; mas us, ceu cursus et actus ;
Porticus utque tr̄ibus muliebria, ācusque, dōmusque,
Et m̄anus, et quercus, sic cum quinquātr̄ibus īdus ;
Sensus ānus, n̄rus, et socrus muliebria monstrat.*

X. DECLENSION V.

*Quinta genus muliebri dat, ut spes ; at numero mas
Plurali tantum, primo commune dies est.* 131

XI. ADJECTIVES.

*Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia formam,
Ut felix, audax, retinent genus omne sub unā.
Sub geminā si voce cadunt, velut omnis et omne,
Vox commune duūm prior est, vox altera neutrum.* 135
*At si tres variant voces, sācer ut, sācra, sācrum,
Vox prima est mas, altera f̄emina, tertia neutrum.*

*Sunt quēis plurales casus in a non adhibentur,
Pauper, īnops, p̄ber, sospes, cum dēgēner, ūber,
Et dīves, lōcūples, mēm̄or, immēm̄or, atque sūperstes.* 140

NOUNS HETEROCLITE, OR IRREGULAR.

*Quæ genus aut flexum variant, quæcunque novato
Ritu deficiunt, superantve, Heteroclita sunt.*

Hæc genus in variis numeris variantia cernis :

Nam primo maria hæc numero sunt, neutra secundo :
Tartārus horribilis, sic sībīlus, intūbus exstant ; 5
Plurali jōcus at numero genus addit utrumque,
Et lōcus ; hæc primo muliebria, neutra secundo :
Pergāmos, et lautis exquirenda ostrea cænis,
Carbāsus ; hæc primo neutrum, mas altero habebunt,
Et sīser, et cœlum, Junonique Argos amatum : 10
Rastrum plurali et frenum genere exstat utroque,
Quin ěpūlum primo, ast ěpūlæ plurale leguntur.

Quæ sequitur manca est casu, numerove propago :

His neutris nullos poteris tu cernere casus,
Nī qui sunt, ut scis, tibi semper in hoc genere idem ; 15
Hippōmānes, cācōēthēs, ěpos, mēlos, adjice gummi,
Et fas, māne, nihil, pondo, instar ; grata perenni
Sub Zephyro Tempe plurali ; tot, quot, et omnes
A tribus ad centum numeri, quæ aptota vocantur.

Sunt quoque rectus abest quæis casus nomina multa, 20
Aut alii, nullo certo ordine deficientes.
Ut fors, frūgis, ōpis, dāpis, et vīcis, impētis, et vis,
Verbēris, et fīdis, atque lues, sordemque, vepremque ;
Quin ablativo solo sunt pauca videnda,
Ut sunt compēde, fauce, prēce, atque ambāge ; sed omnia
Integra plurali numero plerumque leguntur, 26
Sic jussu, nātu, permissu, sponte ; rōgātu,
Mandātu ; sed et his pluralis deficit, atque
Occurrent quoque plura suo tibi tempore quæque.

Hæc numerum nunquam (prohibet nam sensus) habebunt
Pluralem ; cœnum, līmus, sic trītīcum, et aurum, 31
Argentum, et paria ; his pietas addenda, pūdorque,
Et sītis, atque fāmes, infantia, firma juvenus,
Atque sēnecta gravis, vel (vox magis apta) sēnectus,
Ver, vesper, lētum, spēcīmen, victusque, sūpellexque,
Et vīrus, sanguis, plebs, atque ignobile vulgus ; 36
Cum paucis aliis ; sic nomina propria cuncta.

NOUNS defective in the Singular Number.

*Mascula sunt tantùm numero contenta secundo,
Mānes, majōres, cancelli, libĕri, et antes,
Prīmōres, prōcĕres, fasti simul, atque mĭnōres,
Infĕri, item Sŭpĕri, lĕmŭres, quibus adde Pĕnātes,
Et loca plurali, quales Găbiique, Lōcrique,
Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.*

40

*Hæc sunt fœminei generis, numerique secundi;
Exŭviæ, phălĕræ, grātes, et ĩneptiæ, et ĩdus,
Blandĭtiæ, induciæ; simul insĭdiæque, mĭnæque,
Excŭbiæ, nōnæ, nŭgæ, trĭcæque, cālendæ,
Quisquĭliæ, thermæ, cŭnæ, dĭræ, exĕquiæque,
Fĕriæ, et infĕriæ; sic prĭmĭtiæque, plăgæque,
Dĕliciæ, tĕnĕbræque, et valvæ, dĭvĭtiæque,
Nuptiæ item, et lactes: addantur Thĕbæ et Athĕnæ;
Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.*

45

50

*Rariùs hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur;
Mœnia, cum tesquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,
Arma, măpălia; sic bellăria, mŭnia, castra:
Funus justa petit, petit et sponsălia virgo;
Rostra disertus amat, puerique crĕpundia gestant,
Infantesque colunt cŭnăbŭla: consulit exta
Augur, sacra piæ connectuntserta puellæ.
Festa deŭm poterunt, ceu Bacchănălia, jungi:
Quòd si plura leges, licet hâc quoque classe reponas.*

55

60

NOUNS declined after both the second and fourth
Declensions.

*Invenies porro tu nomina pauca secundæ
Quosdam etiam casus, lector, sumentia quartæ,
Atque is præcipuè, atque e dedignantia fines,
Ut laurus, necnon fĭcus, dŏmus, altaque pĭnus,
Et cŏlus, et cornus, vivisque invisă cupressus.*

65

OF THE

PERFECT TENSE, AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

Of the Perfect Tense of simple Verbs.

I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

As in præsenti perfectum format in avi,
Ut no nas nāvi, vōcīto vōcītas vōcītavi;
Deme lāvo lāvi, jūvo jūvi; quin cūbo semper
Dat cūbui, sēcō dat sēcui, mīcui mīco reddit;
Sic frīco dat frīcui, dōmo dat dōmui, a sōno semper 5
Formatur sōnui, tōnuique tōno generabit;
Adde crēpo tibi quod crēpui, vēto quod vētui dat;
Interdum nēcō dat necui, plerumque necavi.
Sæpius applicui dabit applico, rarius -avi, at
Supplicō, multiplicō, semper formantur in āvi: 10
Quippe dēdi do das, sto stas formare stēti vult.

II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Es in præsenti perfectum format ui dans;
Ut nīgreo nīgres nīgrui, mōneo mōnui dat,
Et geminum fugiens u, langueo languui habebit.
Sed multa ingenuus puer excipienda videbit: 15
Fit veo vi, ut mōveo mōvi, cāveo quoque cāvi;
Ferveo item fervi, sed sæpe et fervui habebit.
Dat fleo fles flēvi, neo nēvi, dēleo format
Dēlēvi; exōleo et verbum simile omne dat -evi,
Compleo complēvi format, rēpleoque rēplēvi: 20
Dat cieo cīvi, sed raro preteritum exstat.
Plurima sunt quorum perfectum desinit in si,
Ut jūbeo jussi, maneo mansi, ardeo et arsi,
Mulceo mulsi, suadeo suasi, rīdeo risi;
Hæreo sic hæsi formabit, torqueo torsi. 25
L vel r ante geo si stet, geo vertitur in si;
Urgeo ut ursi, mulgeo mulsi, fulgeo fulsi.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Passivi formam fīdo sum fīsus habebit.

Go fit xi, ut jungo junxi; sed r ante go vult si,
Ut spargo sparsi; lēgo lēgi, et āgo facit ēgi, 65

Et frango frēgi; pango pro fīgere panxi,
(Inde tamen composta dabunt semper tibi -pēgi)
Cūm cernis pēpīgi, est præsens plerumque paciscor.

Dat tango tētīgi, pūpūgi dabit ordine pungo,
Sed punxi compōsta; carent perfecto ambīgo, vergo. 70

Guo, ceu restringuo restinxi, xi tibi format.

Ho fit xi, traho quod traxi docet, et veho vexi.

Lo fit ui, cōlo ceu colui; psallo excipe psalli;

Excello legem sequitur, sed percūli habebit

Percello; pēpūli dat pello, fallo fēfelli,
Dat vello velli tibi sæpius, est ubi vulsi. 75

Mo fit mpsi, cōmo ceu compsi; at ěmo facit ēmi;

Deinde vōmoque frēmoque gēmoque trēmoque sequuntur,

Quæ per ui perfecta dabunt, dabit et prēmo pressi.

No fit vi, sīno ceu sivi, quin ordine cerno 80

Mutato crēvi; sic sperno; sternoque stravi,

Gigno, pōno, cāno, gēnui, pōsui, cēcīni dant;

Cujus ui compōsta, ut concīno concīnui, dant.

Po fit psi, ut sculpo sculpsi, carpo quoque carpsi;

Sed rumpo semper rūpi, strēpui strepo format. 85

Quo fit xi, cōquo ceu coxi, linquo excipe liqui.

Ro fit si, sæpe s geminato, quod gēro monstrat,

Dans gessi; tēro dat trīvi, curroque cūcurri;

Quæro quæsīvi, neque enim fēro prætereatur,

Quod tūli habet; sēro dat sēvi, compōsta sed ejus 90

Et -sevi et -sērui dant, insēro, consēro, formā

Mutatā ad sensum, -sērui sed dēsēro tantum,

Assēro item formant; nullum fūro præteritum dat.

So fit si, ut vīso visi, pinso adjice pinsi,

Pinsui item; depso quoque depsui; at omne dat -esso

-essīvi, ut probat arcesso, incesso, atque lācesso. 96

To fit ti, ut verto verti; sic ordine verso,

Obstīti ab obsisto fluit, adde insisto, rēsisto;

Dat mitto mīsi, pēto vult formare pētivi,

Sterto stertui habet, mēto messui: ab -ecto fit -exi, 100

*Ut flecto flexi ; necto dat nexui, habetque
 Nexi, sic pecto dat pexui, habet quoque pexi.
 Vo fit vi, ut volvo volvi, vivo excipe vixi.
 Xo xui habet, texo ut monstrat, quod texui habebit.
 Fit cio ci, ut făcio fēci, jăcio quoque jēci ; 105
 Allicio allexi, ēlicio ēlicui tibi format.
 Aspicio aspexi, sic conspicio, inspicioque.
 Fit dio di, ut fōdio fōdi ; gio, ceu fūgio, -gi.
 Fit pio pi, ut căpio cēpi ; cŭpio ecce cŭpivi,
 Et răpio răpui, săpio săpui atque săpivi. 110
 Dat părio pēpēri ; dat concŭtio concussi.
 Denique uo fit ui, ut stătuo stătui ; pluo plŭvi
 Format, sive plui ; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.
 Compositum simplex sequitur ; sed syllaba semper
 Quam simplex geminat compōsto non geminatur. 115*

IV. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Quarta dat is ivi, ut monstrat scio scis tibi scīvi ;
 Excipias vĕnio dans vĕni, raucio rausi,
 Haurio item hausi, farcio farci, fulcio fulsi,
 Sarcio sarcis, sentio sensi, sēpio sepsi,
 Sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi ; tum tria verba 120
 Formantur per ui ; sălio, apĕrio, opĕrioque,
 In ri compĕrio -rio mutat, repĕrioque,
 Perfectum præbent fĕrio atque sŭperbio nullum.*

V. Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *E*.

*Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
 Si componantur, vocalem primam in e mutant : 125
 Damno, lacto, săcro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fătiscor,
 Cando vetus, capto, jacto, pătior, grădiorque,
 Partio, carpo, pătro, scando, sic farcio, spargo.*

VI. Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *I*.

*Hæc hábeo, lăteo, sălio, stătuo, cădo, lædo,
 Tango, căno, plăceo, tĕneo, sic cædo, cecīdi, 130
 Quæro, ĕgeo, făteor, tăceo, săpio, răpioque,*

*Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant,
Ut rāpio, erīpio ; sed verbi simplicis usum
Hæc duo, complāceo cum perplāceo, benè servant.*

*Composita à verbis calco, salto, a per u mutant ; 135
Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, rēsulto.*

*Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a :
Id docet, à claudio, occludo, excludo ; à quatioque,
Percutio, excutio ; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata ;
Plaudo au mutat in o, quod displōdo tibi monstrat. 140*

VII. Compound Verbs which change the Vowel of the Present Tense into *I*, but not the Preterperfect Tense.

*Hæc si componas, āgo, ěmo, sēdeo, rēgo, frango,
Et cāpio, jācio, lācio, spēcio, prēmo, pango,
Vocalem primam præsentis in i sibi mutant,
Præteriti nunquam ; ceu frango, rēfringo rēfrēgi ;
A cāpio, incīpio incēpi. Sed pauca notentur ; 145*

*Namque suum simplex pērāgo sequitur, sātāgoque ;
Atque ab āgo, dēgo dat dēgi, cōgō coēgi ;
A rēgo, sic pergo perrexi ; vult quoque surgo
Surrexi ; mediā præsentis syllabā ademptā.*

*Composita à pango retinent a quatuor ista : 150
Dēpango, oppango, circumpango, atque rēpango.*

*Nil variat fācio, nisi præposito præeunte :
Id docet olfācio, cum calfācio, infīcioque.*

*A lēgo nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte,
Præsentis servant vocalem ; in i cætera mutant ; 155
De quibus hæc, intelligo, dilīgo, neglīgo, tantum
Præteritum lexi faciunt ; reliqua omnia legi.*

VIII. Of the Supines of simple Verbs.

*Nunc ex præterito discas formare supinum.
Perfectum unum in bi, bībitum formare bībi vult.*

*Ci fit ctum, ut vīci victum testatur, et īci 160
Dans ictum, fēci factum, jēci quoque jactum.*

*Di fit sum, ut vīdi vīsum : quædam geminant s ;
Ut pandi passum, sēdi sessum, adūe scīdi, quod
Dat scissum, atque fīdi fissum, fōdi quoque fossam.*

Syllaba non ullis geminatur prima supinis ; 165

Idque tōtondi dans tonsūm docet, atque cecīdi

Quod cæsum, et cecīdi quod dat casum, atque tētendi

Quod tensum et tentum, tūtūdi tunsum, atque dēdi quod

Jure dātum poscit ; sic quot nascuntur ab illo,

Addīdi ut addītum habet ; morsum vult atque momordi.

Gi fit ctum, ut lēgi lectum, pēgi pēpīgique 171

Dant pactum, frēgi fractum, tētīgi quoque tactum,

Ēgi actum, pūpūgi punctum ; fūgi fūgītum dat.

Li fit sum, ut pēpūli pulsum, sic rite fēfelli

Falsum ; percūli habet perculsum ; neve tūli te 175

Aufugiat, semper cui lātum venit in usum.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum sumunt, velut hīc manifestum ;

Emi emptum, vēni ventum, cēcīni à cāno cantum,

A cāpio cēpi captum, cœpi quoque cœptum ;

A rumpo rūpi ruptum, līqui quoque lictum. 180

Ri fit sum, ut verri versum ; pēpēri excipe partum.

Si fit sum, ut vīsi visum ; quin ss geminato,

Mīsi formabit missum, fulsi excipe fultum,

Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi quoque fartum,

Ussi ustum, gessi gestum ; torsi sibi tortum 185

Vindicat ; indulsi sic indultum tibi format.

*Psi fit ptum, ut scripsi scriptum ; sculpsi quoque
sculptum.*

Ti vult sum, ut verti versum, formare ; supinum

Cūm stīti habet, stātum erit, sed vix reperire valebis.

Vi fit tum, ut flāvi flātum ; pāvi excipe pastum : 190

Dat lāvi lōtum, interdum lautum atque lāvātum,

Pōtāvi pōtum, vēnīvi à vēněō vēnum ;

Dat fāvi fautum, cāvi cautum : à sērō sēvi

Formes rite sātum, sēpēlīvi disce sēpultum,

Et singultivi singultum semper habebit : 195

Solvi à solvo sōlūtum, volvi à volvo vōlūtum.

*Quod dat ui' dat ĩtum, ut dōmui dōmītum : excipe
quodvis*

Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in ūtum ;

Exui ut exūtum : à ruo deme rui ruītum dans :

Vult sēcui sectum, nēcui nectum, frīcuique 200

Frictum, miscui item mistum, dōcui quoque doctum,

Torruī *habet* tostum, contentum continūique ;
Adjice consūlui consultum, ālui altum ālitumque ;
Sic sālui saltum, cōlui occūlui quoque cultum ;
 Pinsui *habet* pistum, rāpui raptum, sēruīque 205
 4 sēro *vult* sertum ; *sic* texui *habet* quoque textum.

Censui *habet* censum, messum quoque messui *habebit*,
 Nexui *item* nexum, *sic* pexui *habet* quoque pexum.

Xi *fit* ctum, *ut* vinxi vinctum : quædam abjiciunt n :
Ut finxi fictum *semper* dabit, *adjice* pinxi 210

Dans pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi quoque rictum :
 Xum, flexi, plexi, fixi, *dant* ; *et* fluo fluxum..

IX. Of the Supines of Compound Verbs.

Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,
Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utrique.

Composita à tunsum, *demptá* n, tusum : *à* ruitum *fit*.
I mediá demptá rütum ; *et à* saltum quoque sultum ; 216
A sero, quando sätum format, composta sítum dant.

Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, *a per e mutant* ;
Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, *adjice* fartum.

A nosco tantùm duo cognítum *et* agnítum *habentur* ; 220
Cætera dant nōtum : *nullo est jam* noscítum *in usu.*

X. Of the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in *Or*.

Verba in or admittunt ex posteriore supino
Præteritum, verso u per us, et sum consociato
Vel fui ; ut à lectu, lectus sum vel fui. At horum
Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum : 225

Nam lābor lapsus ; pātior *dat* passus, *et ejus*
Natum perpētior perpassus ; *dat* fāteorque
 Fassus, confīteor confessus ; *dat* grādiorque
 Gressus, *dat* mensus sum mētior, ūtor *et* ūsus.

Pro texo ordītus, *pro incepto* *habet* ordior orsus, 230
 ! Nītor nīsus *vel* nixus sum, ulciscor *et* ultus,
 Irascor *simul* iratus, reor *atque* rātus sum,
 Oblīviscor *vult* oblītus sum, fruor *optat*
 Fructus *vel* frūitus : mīsērēri *iunge* mīsertus.

Atque -itus ; à tuor et tueor tūtus tūtusque ; 235
A lōquor adde lōcūtus, et à sēquor adde secūtus.

Expērior facit expertus ; formare pāciscor
Gaudet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus, āpiscor,
Quod vetus est verbum, aptus sum ; unde ādīpiscor
ādeptus.

Junge quēror questus, prōfīciscor junte prōfectus, 246
Expergiscor sum experrectus ; et hæc quoque, commi-
niscor commentus, nascor nātus, mōriorque
Mortuus, atque ōrior, quod præteritum facit ortus.
Perfecto mēdeor, vescor, līquorque carebunt,
Sic quoque diffiteor, sic ringor, sic rēminiscor. 245

XI. Of Verbs which make the Preterperfect Tense both in the Active and Passive Voice.

Præteritum activæ et passivæ vocis habent hæc :
Nūbo nupsi nuptaque sum ; plāceo plācui dat
Et plācītus ; libet et libuit libītum ; licet adde,
Quod licuit licītum ; tædet, quod tædui, et dat
Pertæsum ; adde pūdet, faciens pūdui pūditumque ;
Atque pīget, tibi quod format pīguit pīgītumque. 251

XII. Verbs which seldom admit a Supine.

Hæc rarò aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum :
Lambo, mīco micui, rūdo, scābo, parco pēperci,
Dispesco, posco, compesco, atque adjice disco :
Dēgo, ango, sūgo, lingo, ningo, sātāgoque, 255
Psallo, vōlo, nōlo, mālo, trēmo, strīdeo, strīdo,
Flāveo, līveo, āvet, pāveo, connīveo, fervet :
A nuo compositum, ut renuo : à cādo, ut accīdo ; præter
Occīdo, quod facit occāsum, rēcīdoque rēcāsum :
Respuo, sic mētuo, luo, frīgeo, calveo, sterto, 260
Sic etiam tīmeo : sic lūceo, et arceo, cujus
Composita -ercītum habent : sic a gruο, ut ingruο, nata ;
Et quæcunque in ui formantur neutra secundæ :
Excipias ōleo, dōleo, plāceo, tāceoque,
Pāreo, item cāreo, nōceo, jāceo, lāteoque, 265
Et vāleo, cāleo ; gaudent hæc numque supino.

SYNTAXIS:

OR,

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GRAMMAR.

CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

Nominativus et Verbum.

1. VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ : ut,

Ego loquor.

Homines audiunt.

2. Nominativus pronominum omittitur, nisi distinctionis aut emphasis gratiâ : ut,

Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis. Cic.

Auditis, an me ludit amabilis

Insania? Audire et videor pios

Errare per lucos. Hor.

Possunt quia posse videntur. Virg.

3. Aliquando verbum infinitivi modi usurpatur pro nominativo vel pro accusativo casu nominis : ut,

Ingenuas didicisse fide-liter artes

Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros. Ovid.

Quod crimen dicis, præter amâsse, meum? Ovid.

4. Cùm duo sunt nomina diversarum personarum, verbum cum personâ digniore concordat :* ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et suavissimus Cicero va-
lemus. Cic.*

5. Cùm duo aut plura nomina singularis numeri unum verbum sequitur, plerumque in plurali ponitur, si

* Apud Latinos prima persona dignissima est, et genus masculinum.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Rara avis in terris nigroque simillima cygno. Juv.

10. Cùm verbum infinitivi modi, aut sententiæ pars pro substantivo usurpatur, neutrius generis habetur: ut,
Humanum est irasci.

11. Cùm plura sunt substantiva diversorum generum, adjectivum cum digniore genere concordat, si de *animantibus* agitur, et si in numero plurali ponitur: ut,
Jam pridem pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.

12. Si vero de *rebus* agitur, adjectivum sæpè in neutro genere ponitur: ut,
Secundæ res, honores, imperia, victoriæ, fortuita sunt. Cic.

(a) Interdum adjectivum cum proximo substantivo concordat, cujuscunque generis sit, præsertim cùm in singulari numero ponitur: ut,

Animus, et consilium, et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus. Cic.

13. Adjectivum aliquando concordat cum substantivo quod significatur, non cum eo quod exprimitur: ut,

Thracum auxilia, (i. e. Thraces auxiliantes) cum pars (i. e. aliqui ex iis) munitionibus adjacerent, cæsi sunt. Tac.

14. Aliquando nullum substantivum exprimitur, sed adjectivum pro substantivo usurpatur: ut,

Mira loquor. Ovid.

Multi pro patriâ mortem libenter oppetierunt. Cic.

CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

Relativum et Antecedens.

15. Relativum cum antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ: ut,

Ego sum ille consul qui Romam servavi.

Contemnimus hominem qui amat mendacia.

16. Quoniam relativum adjectivum est, easdem dædere leges quas adjectivum sequitur: ut,

Eæ fruges atque fructus quos terra gignit. Cic.

Duo importuna prodigia (i. e. viri prodigiosi sceleris) quos improbitas tribuno plebis constrictos addixerat. Cic.

Ubi est illud scelus qui me perdidit? Ter.

17. Aliquando sententia aut pars sententiæ ponitur pro antecedente : ut,

In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum. Ter.

18. Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, sæpè cum posteriore concordat : ut,

Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur. Cic.

(a) Relativum sæpe ponitur Latine, ubi in nostro sermone pronomine cum conjunctione utimur : ut,

Hoc si scïsses, pater, cujus (i. e. ejus enim, vel tantæ enim) pietatis es, nemo te antecessisset. Quint.

Et tamen in cœlo, quæ (i. e. tanta enim) jam patientia nostra est,

Spernimur. Ovid.

Pater tuus si viveret, quâ severitate (i. e. tantâ enim) fuit, tu profecto non viveres. Cic.

Hoc jussit, quod (i. e. sed illud) si fecissem, omnia perdidissem.

19. Aliquando relativum concordat cum primitivo, quod in possessivo subauditur : ut,

Vestrâ, qui cum summâ integritate vixistis, hoc maxime interest. Cic.

(a) Relativum, cùm ad nomen multitudinis refertur, aliquando in plurali ponitur : ut,

Cæsar equitatum omnem præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Cæs.

20. Si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur à verbo aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur : ut,

Te peto quem merui. Ovid.

Cujus numen adoro.

(a) Cùm relativum superlativo adjungitur, superlativum in eodem sententiæ membro quo relativum ponitur: ut,
Themistocles servum quem fidelissimum habuit ad Xerxem misit. Cor. Nep.

NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

SUBSTANTIVA.

21. Duo substantiva rei: ejusdem in eodem casu ponuntur: ut,

Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum. Ovid.

22. Quum duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

Crescit amor nummi quantum ipsa pecunia crescit. Juv.

23. Adjectivum in neutro genere pro substantivo positum, genitivum postulat: ut,

Hoc ad te literarum dedi. Cic.

Ad ultimum inopiæ venerant. Liv.

Ferimur per opaca locorum. Virg.

24. Ponitur interdum genitivus tantùm, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito: ut,

Ventum erat ad Vestæ, (i. e. *ad templum Vestæ.*) Hor.

Hasdrubal Gisgonis, (i. e. *Gisgonis filius.*) Liv.

25. Substantivum qualitatem denotans, adjuncto adjectivo, in genitivo vel in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Titus facilitatis tantæ fuit, ut nemini quicquam negaret.

Eutr.

Agesilaus staturâ fuit humili et corpore exiguo.

Corn. Nep.

(a) Substantiva à verbis derivata interdum eosdem casus post se admittunt, quos verba à quibus derivantur exigunt: ut,

Domum reditionis spe sublatâ. Cæs.

Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus. Cic.

26. *Opus et usus* ablativum rei, cum dativo personæ, exigunt: ut,

Auctoritate tuâ nobis opus est. Cic.

Pecuniam quâ nihil sibi esset usus ab iis non accepit.
Gell.

(a) *Opus* autem adjective, pro *necessarius*, aliquando poni videtur: ut,

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. Cic.

ADJECTIVA.

Genitivus post Adjectivum.

27. Adjectiva, vel participia pro adjectivis posita, quæ cupidinem, scientiam, memoriam, timorem, diligentiam, participationem, atque iis contraria, significant, cum plurimis aliis quæ qualitatem vel motum aliquem animi denotant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

Pythagoras sapientiæ studiosos appellavit philosophos.
Cic.

Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet. Ovid.

Venturæ memores jam nunc estote senectæ. Ovid.

Nescia mens hominum fati sortisque futuræ. Virg.

Romani appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras gentes fuerunt. Cic.

Serpit humi tutus nimium timidusque procellæ. Hor.

Vir omnis officii diligentissimus. Cic.

Cæteræ habere domi fortunarum omnium participem possunt. Cic.

Sæpe potens voti redit anus. Ovid.

(a) Ex his *particeps* interdum dativo personæ jungitur: ut,
Mater in plerisque ruris operibus marito particeps. Quint.

(b) *Conscius* genitivum rei, dativum personæ, postulat; interdum etiam dativo rei jungitur, personâ subauditâ: ut,

Conscius sibi tanti sceleris. Sall.

Huic facinori tanto (i. e. illi quæ hoc facinus admiserit) mens tua conscia esse non debuit. Cic.

28. Adjectiva quæ copiam egestatemve significant, genitivum, interdum etiam ablativum, exigunt: ut,

Dives equum, dives pictæ vestis et auri. Virg.

Dives agris, dives positus in fœnore nummis. Hor.

Opis non indiga nostræ. Virg.

Plena errorum sunt omnia. Cic.

Utriusque harum rerum humanus animus est expers
Cic

29. Adjectiva quæ liberalitatem vel contrarium significant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

Liberalis pecuniæ. Sall.

Veteris non parcus aceti. Hor.

30. *Proprius, superstes, communis*, cum paucis aliis, genitivum, interdum etiam dativum, admittunt: ut,

Populi Romani propria est libertas.

Aliorum superstites sumus. Tac.

Hoc commune est potentiæ cupidorum cum otiosis. Cic.

Omni ætati mors est communis.

Pomponius Tiberio superstes fuit. Tac.

(a.) *Communis* verò pronomini personali nunquam nisi in dativo jungitur: ut,

Hoc mihi tecum commune est.

31. *A alienus* genitivo, vel dativo, vel ablativo, vel ablativo cum præpositione, jungitur: ut,

Hoc alienum esse suæ dignitatis censet. Cic.

A alienus ambitioni. Sen.

Fraus homine alienissima est. Cic.

Non alienus à Scævola studiis. Cic.

32. Adjectiva quæ crimen vel contrarium significant, genitivo junguntur: ut,

Regulus collegam, ut noxium conjurationis, ad disquisitionem trahebat. Tac.

Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus. Hor.

33. Adjectiva verbalia in *ax* genitivum exigunt: ut,

Tempus edax rerum.

34. Adjectiva partitiva, numeralia, comparativa et superlativa, et adjectiva partitivè posita, genitivum exigunt: ut,

Utrum horum mavis accipe.

Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romulus.

Manuum fortior est dextra.

Digitorum medius est longissimus.

Sequimur te, sancte Deorum. Virg.

(a) Usurpantur et cum his præpositionibus, *de, ex, in, inter* :
ut,

Nam Deus è vobis alter es, alter eris. Ovid.

Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit. Cic.

Solus de superis qui tua terga vides. Ovid.

Inter mille rates tua sit millesima puppis. Ovid.

Dativus post Adjectivum.

35. Adjectiva, quibus commodum, similitudo, aut iis similia vel contraria, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant: ut,

Si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris. Juv.

Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti. Mart.

Patri similis. Cic.

Virtus fructuosa aliis, ipsi laboriosa. Cic.

Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo. Ovid

Socrates iudicibus non supplex fuit. Cic.

Dîs carus ipsis. Hor.

Est finitimus oratori poeta.

(a) Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant, et adjectivum *affinis*, etiam genitivo junguntur: ut,

Qui mortem leviozem faciunt, somni simillimam volunt esse. Cic.

Affinis hujus culpæ. Cic.

36. *Natus, habilis, commodus, utilis, aptus*, cum quibusdam aliis, etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur: ut,

Natus ad gloriam. Cic.

Utilis ad eam rem.

37. Adjectiva verbalia in *bilis*, accepta passivè, dativum postulant: ut,

*Nulli penetrabilis astro
Lucus iners.* Stat.

38. Participia passivæ vocis dativum, vel ablativum cum præpositione, postulant: ut,
*Primâ dicte mihi, summâ dicende Camænâ,
 Mæcenâs. Hor.
 Senex sapiens ab Apolline dictus.*

Accusativus post Adjectivum.

39. Adjectiva magnitudinem significantia, accusativum exigunt: ut,
Fossa undecim pedes lata. Cic.

40. *Natus*, cùm ad temporis durationem refertur, accusativum exigit: ut,
Undeviginti annos natus. Cic.

41. Accusativus a poetis sæpe subjicitur adjectivis et participiis passivæ vocis, præsertim cùm pars affecta indicatur: ut,

Os humerosque Deo similis. Virg.

[Flores] inscripti nomina regum. Virg.

Stratus nunc viridi membra sub arbuto. Hor.

42. Accusativus sæpe in exclamationibus usurpatur, interjectione aliquâ, a quâ reverà regitur, subauditâ: ut,
Me cæcum (i. e. O me cæcum) qui hæc ante non viderim! Cic. [Vide infra, Reg. 154.]

Ablativus post Adjectivum.

43. Adjectiva regunt ablativum significantem causam, aut formam, aut modum rei: ut,

Scelere par est illi, industriâ inferior. Cic.

Trojanus origine Cæsar. Virg.

44. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *contentus*, *extorris*, *fretus*, cum adjectivis pretium significantibus, ablativum exigunt: ut,

Dignus es odio. Ter.

Mens est prædita motu sempiterno. Cic.

Sorte tuâ contentus abi.

Extorris agro Romano. Sall.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Prælium atrocius quàm pro numero pugnantium editur. Liv.

Major sum quàm cui possit fortuna nocere. Ovid.
Flumen latius erat quàm ut tranare possent.

PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

47. *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, genitivi primitivorum, ponuntur cùm persona significatur: ut,
Languet desiderio tui.

Parsque tui lateat corpore clausa meo. Ov.
Imago nostri.

48. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, ponuntur cùm actio vel possessio rei significatur: ut,
Favet desiderio tuo.

Imago nostra, (i. e. quam nos possidemus.)

49. Pronomina possessiva hos genitivos post se interdum recipiunt, *ipsius, solius, unius, omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, et genitivos participiorum qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

Dixi meâ unius operâ rempublicam esse salvam. Cic.
Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.

Cùm mea nemo

Scripta legat, vulgo recitare timentis. Hor.

De tuo ipsius studio conjecturam ceperis. Cic.

In suâ cujusque laude præstantior.

Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.

Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus. Cic.

50. *Sui et suus* reciproca sunt, id est, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præcessit: ut,

Sentit animus se vi suâ non alienâ moveri. Cic.

Oravit me pater, ut ad se venirem. Cic.

51. Hæc demonstrativa, *hic, iste, ille, is*, fere sic distinguuntur; *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat; *iste*, eum qui apud te est; *ille*, eum qui ab utroque remotus est; *is*, eum de quo mentio fit.

52. Quum *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius, refertur: ut,

Cæsar magnificentiâ magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato: Ille mansuetudine clarus factus; huic severitas dignitatem addiderat. Sall.

(a.) Nonnunquam vero *hic et ille* mutatas vices habent: ut, *Melior tutiorque est certa pax quàm sperata victoria; hæc in tuâ, illa in Deorum potestate est. Liv.*

53. *Idem copulativam vim sæpe habet: ut, Nil liberale est quod non idem justum. Cic. Operam in res obscuras conferunt, easdemque non necessarias. Cic.*

VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

Nominativus post Verbum.

54. Verba substantiva, ut *sum, fio, existo*; verba vocandi passiva, ut *nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor*, et iis similia, ut *videor, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eosdem casus habent: ut,

Deus est mundi Creator.

Natura beatis

Omnibus esse dedit.

Ex nitido fit rusticus. Hor.

Opiferque per orbem

Dicor. Ovid.

Da mihi fallere, da justo sanctoque videri. Hor.

(a.) Item omnia ferè verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum nominativo verbi casu, genere, et numero concordat: ut,

Pii orant taciti.

Malus pastor dormit supinus.

Genitivus post Verbum.

55. *Sum et fio* genitivum postulant, quoties significant possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet: ut,

Adolescentis est majores natu revereri. Cic.

Thebæ populi Romani belli jure factæ sunt. Liv.

56. Verba accusandi, damnandi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum criminis vel poenæ exigunt, accusativum personæ: ut,

Alterum ambitús accusat. Cic.

Proditionis eum insimulabant. Cæs.

Octupli damnatus est. Cic.

57. Vertitur hic genitivus aliquando in ablativum, interdum (cùm de crimine agitur) cum præpositione *de*: ut,

Si in me iniquus es judex, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine. Cic.

Non ob eam rem capite damnarer. Cic.

Licinium de aleâ condemnatum restituit. Cic.

(a.) *Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo*, et adjectiva superlativa, non nisi in ablativo hujusmodi verbis junguntur: ut,

Accusas furti, an stupri? Utroque.

De plurimis simul accusaris.

58. Verba miserendi genitivum postulant, præter *miseror*, qui soli accusativo jungitur: ut,

Oro miserere laborum

Tantum, miserere animi non digna ferentis. Virg.

O sola infandos Trojæ miserata labores. Virg.

59. Verba reminiscendi et obliviscendi genitivum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

Proprium est stultitiæ aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum. Cic.

Nec veterum memini lætorve malorum. Virg.

Flagitiorum suorum recordabitur. Cic.

Tu, C. Cæsar, oblivisci nihil soles nisi injurias. Cic.

Hæc olim meminisse juvabit. Virg.

Si ritè audita recordor. Virg.

60. Verba admonendi genitivum rei exigunt, accusativum personæ; interdum ablativum rei cum præpositione *de*; interdum geminum accusativum: ut,

Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suæ. Sall.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

65. Verba appropinquandi, adjungendi, et iis contraria, dativum exigunt: ut,

Nescit equo rudis hærere ingenuus puer. Hor.

Forti miscebat mella Falerno. Hor.

Curru jungit equos. Virg.

Paulum sepultæ distat inertiae

Celata virtus: Eripe te moræ. Hor.

(a.) Quædam ex his composita cum præpositione *ad* accusativum cum *ad* admittunt; et interdum verba amovendi et distandi ablativum cum præpositione, vel (apud poetas) sine præpositione, admittunt: ut,

Hi ad summam aquam appropinquant. Cic.

Seston Abydenâ separat urbe fretum. Ovid.

A malis igitur mors nos abducit, non à bonis. Cic.

Quantum distet ab Inacho Codrus narras. Hor.

66. Verba imperandi, parendi, resistendi, et dicendi, regunt dativum: ut,

Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique. Hor.

Dic mihi, quid feci? Ovid.

Quæ tibi promitto me sanctissimè esse observaturum.
Cic.

Tempore paret equus lentis animosus habenis. Ovid.

Omnibus ejus dictis repugnaui.

(a.) *Excipe rego, guberno, jubeo*, quæ accusativum; *tempero et moderor*, quæ vel dativum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

Fortem hoc animum tolerare jubebo.

Ille regit dictis animos. Virg.

Te hortor, ut omnia gubernes prudentiâ tuâ. Cic.

Sit censor, qui viros doceat moderari uxoribus. Cic.

Non voluptate sed officio consilia moderari decet. Cic.

Æolus ventorum temperat iras. Virg.

Vix temperavere animis. Liv.

67. Verba irascendi regunt dativum: Verba condonandi dativum personæ, accusativum culpæ, si ambo exprimuntur; si alterum tantùm, dativum: Verba minandi dativum personæ, accusativum rei: ut,

Adolescenti nihil est quod succenseam. Ter.

Homines omnia sibi ignoscunt. Sall.

Utrique mortem est minitatus. Cic.

68. Verba fidendi et iis contraria dativum exigunt: ut,
Vacuis committere venis nil nisi lene decet. Hor.
Diffidit perpetuitati bonorum suorum. Cic.

(a.) Interdum vero verba fidendi ablativo junguntur: ut,
Fortunæ stabilitate confidit. Cic.

69. Dativum fermè regunt verba composita cum his adverbiiis, *benè, malè, satis*; et cum his præpositionibus, *ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super, dis, re*: ut,

Dii tibi benefaciant. Ter.

Concionanti circumfundebatur multitudo. Liv.

Judices sibi constare, et superioribus convenire judiciis debuerant. Cic.

Campus interjacens Tiberi et mœnibus Romanis. Liv.

Omnibus ejus consiliis obstiti. Cic.

Vos est postponere natis Ausa suis. Ovid.

Brutum copiis præfecit. Cic.

Ora ipsa oculis proponite. Cic.

Magnitudine animi potest repugnari fortunæ. Cic.

Superfuit patri. Liv.

(a) Nonnulla tamen ex his accusativum interdum regunt: ut,

Præstat ingenio alius alium. Quint.

Beatum est post mortem convenire eos, qui justè et cum fide vixerint. Cic.

70. Passivis verbis subjicitur interdum dativus agentis, interdum ablativus cum præpositione, (*Vid. Reg. 78*): ut,

Hoc in laboribus viventi non intelligitur. Cic.

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis. Hor.

71. *Sum*, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum, alterum personæ, alterum rei: ut,

Exitio est avidis mare nautis. Hor.

Quinque cohortes castris præsidio reliquit. Cæs.

Hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt. Cæs.

Accusativus post Verbum.

72. Verba transitiva exigunt accusativum : ut,
Arma virumque cano. Virg.

Mortem non deprecor, inquit. Virg.

73. Verba neutralia sæpe accusativum cognatæ significationis post se habent : ut,

Duram servit servitutum.

Nec vox hominem sonat ; O Dea, certè. Virg.

(a.) Verba neutralia aliquando etiam accusativum regunt ejus rei, quæ causam significat : ut,

Id tibi succenseo. Cic.

74. Verba rogandi, docendi, celandi, cogendi, sæpe duplicem regunt accusativum : ut,

Tu modò posce Deos veniam. Virg.

Ea ne me celet consuefecit filium. Ter.

Quid nunc te, asine, literas doceam ? Cic.

Quid non mortalia pectora cogis

Auri sacra fames ? Virg.

(a.) Sæpe etiam verba docendi per ellipsin ablativum admittunt : ut,

Socratem fidibus docuit nobilissimus fidicen (i. e. fidibus ludere.) Cic.

75. Quædam etiam verba motûs cum præpositionibus *ad, trans, circum, præter*, composita, duplicem regunt accusativum, quorum alter ad præpositionem refertur : ut,

Iberum copias trajecit. Liv.

Idem jusjurandum adigit Afranium. Cæs.

76. Verba quæ activâ voce duplicem regunt accusativum, et verba vestiendi, etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent : ut,

Posceris exta bovis.

Belgæ Rhenum transducuntur. Cæs.

Induiturque aures lentè gradientis aselli. Ovid.

Ablativus post Verbum.

77. Quodvis verbum admittit ablativum, significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis : ut,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit. Cic.

Te à quartaná liberatum gaudeo. Cic.

Apud veteres Romanos quemcunque mortalium arcere tecto nefas habebatur. Tac.

Tu Jupiter hunc à tuis aris, à tectis urbis arcebis. Cic.

(a.) Apud poetas (ad usum Græcorum) verba abstinendi aliquando genitivum admittunt: ut,

Abstineto,

Dixit, irarum calidæque rixæ. Hor.

Desine mollium

Tandem querelarum. Hor.

82. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, et composita, et supersedeo, ablativo junguntur: ut,*

Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ fungatur officiis. Cic.

Hannibal, cùm victoriá posset uti, frui maluit. Flor.

Quid puer Ascanius, superatne et vescitur aurá? Virg.

Haud equidem tali me dignor honore. Virg.

Diruit, ædificat, mutat quadrata rotundis. Hor.

Verborum multitudine supersedendum est. Cic.

83. *Pascor et nitor ablativo, vel sine præpositione vel cum præpositione, junguntur: ut,*

Floribus et victu pascuntur simplicis herbæ. Virg.

Pascitur in vivis Livor. Ov.

Purá juvenis qui nititur hastá. Virg.

In vitá Pompeii nitebatur salus civitatis. Cic.

84. Ablativus absolutus dicitur quoties substantivum in ablativo cum participio construitur, vel adjectivo, (interdum etiam cum alio substantivo,) ut tempus vel modum, vel aliam rem comitantem, denotet: ut,

Archilochus regnante Romulo floruit. Cic.

Nihil de hác re agi potest salvis legibus. Cic.

Exposito quid iniquitas loci posset. Cæs.

Me duce, tutus eris. Ov.

85. Verbis quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ, et poeticè accusativus: ut,

Micat auribus et tremat artus. Virg.

(a.) Quædam usurpantur, (ad usum Græcorum, sed rarissimè) etiam cum genitivo: ut,

Absurdè facis, qui angas te animi. Plaut.

86. *Exsulo* ablativum, *veneo* ablativum cum præpositione, *vapulo* ablativum, vel sine præpositione vel cum præpositione, admittit: ut,

Mente tamen, quæ sola loco non exsulat, utar. Ov.

Respondit se malle à cive spoliari, quam ab hoste venire. Quint.

Testis rogatus est an ab reo fustibus vapulâsset. Quint.

Omniū sermonibus se sentiet vapulare. Cic.

VERBA INFINITA.

87. Verbis quibusdam, et participiis et adjectivis, adduntur verba infinita: ut,

Dicere quæ puduit scribere jussit amor. Ov.

Jussus confundere fædus. Virg.

Erat tum dignus amari. Virg.

88. Verba rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, et contraria, raro (nisi apud poetas) infinitivum post se habent, plerumque vero conjunctionem cum subjunctivo, (*Vid. Reg. 133*): ut,

Illud te oro et hortor, ut in munere tuo diligentissimus sis. Cic.

Moneo obtestorque, ne hos, qui tibi genere propinqui sunt, negligas. Cic.

Themistocles persuasit populo ut classis ædificaretur.
Corn. Nep.

(a.) Ex his vero *jubeo* et *veto* etiam in pedestri sermone infinitivo sæpius junguntur: ut,

Hannibal Tarentinos sine armis convocari jussit. Liv.

89. Verba efficiendi conjunctio cum subjunctivo semper sequitur: ut,

Tu, quicquid indagaris de republicâ, facito ut sciam.
Cic.

90. Verba accidendi et similia conjunctio cum subjunctivo plerumque sequitur: ut,

Persæpe evenit ut utilitas cum honestate certet. Cic.
Amicis quoniam satisfeci, reliquum est ut eorum
mihi consulam. Corn. Nep.

(a.) Sed contingit infinitivus sæpe sequitur: ut,
Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum. Hor.

91. Verba permittendi, optandi, cogendi, vel infinitivum, vel ut cum subjunctivo, admittunt (*Vid. Reg. 133*): ut,

Phaethon optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur. Cic.
Natura non patitur ut aliorum spoliis nostras opes
augeamus. Cic.

Permittes ipsis expendere numinibus, quid
Conveniat nobis. Juv.

92. *Oportet* et *necesse est* interdum infinitivum, sæpius subjunctivum, post se habent: ut,

Valeat possessor oportet. Hor.

Tanquam ita fieri non solum oporteret, sed etiam
necesse esset. Cic.

Corpus mortale intereat necesse est.

93. Post verba orandi, imperandi, vel volendi, *ut* sæpe omittitur, verbum tamen in subjunctivo ponitur: ut,

Te pro amore nostro rogo atque oro, te colligas virum-
que præbeas. Cic.

Postero die rex edixit omnes armati coirent. Q. Curt.
Vellem Dî immortales fecissent ut vivo Ser. Sulpicio
gratias ageremus. Cic.

Malo te sapiens hostis metuat, quàm stulti cives
laudent. Liv.

(a.) Sic post *cave* sæpe omittitur *ne*: ut,
Cave existimes me abjecisse curam reipublicæ. Cic.

94. Ponuntur interdum sola per ellipsin verba infinita: ut,

Hinc spargere voces
In vulgum ambiguas, et quærere conscius arma. Virg.
 (Hic subauditur *incipiebat*.)



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

SUPINA.

100. Supinum in *um* activam significationem habet, et sequitur verbum significans motum ad locum: ut, *Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.* Ov.

101. Supinum in *u* passivam significationem habet, et sequitur adjectiva: ut, *Quod factu fædum est, idem est et dictu turpe.*

VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

102. Verba quæ nominativum non habent, neque ultra tertiam personam singularem et infinitivum inflectuntur, impersonalia dicuntur: ut,

Hinc tonat, hinc missis abrumpitur ignibus æther. Ov.

103. Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur; et his ablativis, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*: ut,

Interest magistratûs tueri bonos.

Tuâ refert teipsum nôsse.

(a.) Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, minoris*, et similia: ut,

Tanti refert honesta agere.

104. Verba impersonalia casus pro sensu regunt, more aliorum verborum: ut,

Oratorem irasci minimè decet. Cic.

Licuit Themistocli esse otioso. Cic.

105. His verbis *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, propriè additur præpositio *ad*: ut,

Me vis dicere quod ad te attinet? Ter.

106. *Decet, attinet, et spectat*, quamvis impersonalia dicuntur, nominativum sæpe habent, et in tertiâ personâ plurali sæpe inveniuntur: ut,

Candida pax homines. trux decet ira feras. Ovid.

Quæ nihil attinent. Ter.

Æa non ad religionem spectant. Cic.

107. His impersonalibus, *pœnitet, tædet, miseret, pudet, piget*, subjicitur accusativus personæ, cum genitivo rei: ut,

Malo me fortunæ pœniteat quàm victoriæ pudeat. Curt.

Me non solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.

Eorum nos miseret. Cic.

Si non pertæsum thalami tædæque fuisset. Virg.

(a.) Interdum res exprimitur, vel verbo infinitivi modi, vel conjunctione *quòd* et verbo: ut,

Non me pudet fateri nescire quòd nesciam. Cic.

Pœnitet me quòd te offendi. Cic.

108. Pleraque passiva verba in impersonalia verti possunt in tertiâ personâ singulari, et dativum agentis vel ablativum cum præpositione post se admittunt (qui vero sæpius subauditur,) eum vero casum objecti quem verbum activum regit: ut,

Quo ruitis, generosa domus? Malè creditur hosti. Ovid.

In alium quendam locum ex his locis morte migratur. Cic.

DE TEMPORE.

109. Quæ significant partem temporis, in ablativo ponuntur: ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit. Plin.

110. Quæ durationem temporis significant, in accusativo ponuntur: ut,

Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos. Virg.

(a.) Interdum cum ætas hominis significatur, genitivus usurpatur: ut,

Hamilcar secum in Hispaniam duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem. Corn. Nep.

(b.) Interdum, sed perrarò, duratio temporis per ablativum significatur: ut,

Triginta annis vixit Panætius, posteaquam libros de officiis ediderat. Cic.

SPATIUM LOCI.

111. Spatium loci in accusativo ponitur, cùm motus significatur; in ablativo, cùm statio: ut,
Jam mille passus processeram. Liv.

Millibus passuum sex à Cæsaris castris concedit. Cæs.

(a.) Interdum vero accusativus usurpatur etiam cùm statio significatur: ut,

Mille ferè et quingentos passus castra ab urbe locat. Liv.

Dicimus etiam abest bidui, ubi subauditur itinere, vel iter.

NOMINA LOCORUM.

112. Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis in quo fit actio, modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis et singularis numeri sit: ut,

Quid Romæ faciam? Juv.

(a.) Hi genitivi, *domi, humi, militiæ, belli*, nominum priorum sequuntur formam: ut,

Præterea, quibuscunque rebus vel belli vel domi poterunt, rempublicam augeant. Cic.

Procumbit humi bos. Virg.

Unà semper militiæ et domi fuimus. Ter.

113. Verùm si oppidi nomen pluralis numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Colchus an Assyrius, Thebis nutritus an Argis. Hor.

Romæ Tibur amo, ventosus, Tibure Romam. Hor.

114. Verbis significantibus motum *ad locum* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

Atque aliquis, Doctas jam nunc eat, inquit, Athenas. Ovid.

(a.) Hanc constructionem sequuntur *domus* et *rus*: ut,
Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ. Virg.

Ego rus ibo.

115. Verbis significantibus motum *à loco* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in ablativo sine præpositione: ut,

Nisi ante Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinqueres.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

**Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Exercitum habuit quàm proximè hostem. Cic.

120. *Ergo* genitivum post se habet: ut,
Donari virtutis ergo benevolentiaeque. Cic.

121. *Procul* ablativo interdum jungitur: ut,
*Multi suam rem benè gessere et publicam patriam
procul. Cic.*

(a.) Apud poetas et senioris ævi scriptores, *clam*, *palam*, et *inimul* ablativo junguntur; et aliquando *usque* cum accusativo vel ablativo: ut,

Clam uxore meâ et filio. Ter.

Simul his te, candide Furni.....dicere possum. Hor.

Corpora usque pedes carbaso velabant. Curt.

CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

122. CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ, et disjunctivæ, similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt: ut,

Socrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.

Nec scribit nec legit.

Occidit,

Nulli flebilior quàm tibi, Virgili. Hor.

(a.) Nisi variæ constructionis ratio aliud poscat: ut,

Emi librum centussi et pluris.

Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.

123. Pro *quàm* post comparativum poetæ interdum usurpant *atque*: ut,

Arctius atque hederæ procera astringitur ilex. Hor.

124. Cùm comparatio significatur, sæpe usurpatur *tam*, respondente *quàm*: ut,

Veliem tam domestica ferre possem quàm ista contemnere. Cic.

125. Cùm significatur aliquid maximum esse quod fieri potest, sæpè usurpatur superlativus præcedente *quàm*, interdum *quàm* possum: ut,

*Mihi nihil fuit optabilius quàm ut quàm gratissimu
erga te esse cognoscerer. Cic.*

Cæsar ad hostem quàm maximis potuit itineribus contendit. Cæs.

(a.) Pro *quàm* ante superlativum *maximus*, *quantus* aliquando usurpatur : ut,

Hannibal quantam maximam vastitatem potest cædibus incendiisque efficit. Liv.

126. *Donec*, *quoad*, et *dum*, cùm ad tempus refertur, indicativum modum plerumque exigunt, subjunctivum rarius : ut,

Priami dum regna manebant. Virg.

Milo in senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est. Cic.

Donec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. Liv.

Haud desinam donec perfecero. Ter.

Tertia dum regnantem viderit ætas. Virg.

Expectas fortasse dum hæc dicat. Cic.

127. *Dummodo*, et *dum*, vel *modo* pro *dummodo* usurpata, soli subjunctivo junguntur : ut,

Omnia postposui dummodo præceptis patris pārērem. Cic.

Oderint dum metuant. Cic.

Manent ingenia senibus modo permaneat studium et industria. Cic.

128. *Quum*,* causam significans, vel connectionem aliquam duarum sententiarum denotans, subjunctivo jungitur ; si usurpetur pro *quòd*, indicativo : ut,

Druentia, quum aquæ vim vehat ingentem, non tamen navium patiens est. Liv.

Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metús plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare. Cic.

Præclarè facis quum Luculli memoriam tenes. Cic.

129. *Quum*, sequente *tum*, interdum subjunctivo, sæpius indicativo jungitur : ut,

Quum multæ res in philosophiâ nequicquam satis explicatæ sint, tum perdifficilis quæstio est de naturâ Deorum. Cic.

* *Quum* sæpe scribitur *cùm*.

Quum cognitionem juris auguriî consequi cupio, tum meherculè tuis incredibiliter studiis delector. Cic.

130. *Quum*, tempus significans, interdum indicativo, interdum subjunctivo, jungitur: ut,

Qui non propulsat injuriam à suis, quum potest, injustè facit. Cic.

Ad Hannibalem quum ad lacum Averni esset, quinque nobiles juvenes venerunt. Liv.

Erit illud profectò tempus, quum gravissimi hominis fidem desideres. Cic.

131. *Antequam* et *priusquam* subjunctivo junguntur si res in dubio est, vel si duæ res de quibus agitur connectuntur; aliter, indicativum admittunt: ut,

Tempestas minatur antequam surgat. Sen.

Ante omnia veneunt quam gleba una ematur. Cic.

Quàm benè vivebant Saturno rege, priusquam Tellus in longas est patefacta vias. Tib.

132. *Quin* et *quominus* negationem, vel dubitationem, vel simile aliquid sequentia, subjunctivum exigunt: ut,

Non dubitat quin brevi Troja sit peritura. Cic.

Parmenio Philippum deterrere voluit quominus medicamentum biberet. Curt.

Tiberium non solitudines protegebant quin tormenta pectoris fateretur. Tac.

133. Conjunctiones finales, *ut*, *quo*, *ne*, et aliæ ab his derivatæ, subjunctivum exigunt: ut,

Pylades Oresten se esse dixit, ut pro illo necaretur. Cic.

Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. Sen.

Vereor ne tuum laborem augeam. Cic.

134. *Ut*, cùm tempus vel comparisonem significat, indicativum post se habet: ut,

Ut sumus in Ponto, ter frigore constitit Ister. Ovid.

Ut fugiunt aquilam, timidissima turba, columbæ. Ov.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Sic cogitandum est tanquam aliquis in intimum pectus inspicere possit. Sen.

140. *Quòd, quia, quoniam*, indicativo junguntur, cùm opinionem loquentis indicant; cùm aliorum, subjunctivo: ut,

Refugit te, quia rugæ

Turpant et capitis nives. Hor.

Laudat Panætius Africanum, quòd fuerit abstinens. Cic.

141. *Utrum, ne, an, num*, cùm dubitationem vel obliquam interrogationem significant, subjunctivum postulant, etiamsi conjunctio ipsa subaudiatur: ut,

Difficile est dictu utrum hostes magis Pompeii virtutem pugnantes timuerint, an mansuetudinem victi dilexerint. Cic.

Legati speculari jussi sunt num sollicitati animi sociorum a rege Perseo essent. Liv.

Doleam necne doleam nihil interest. Cic.

142. *Ne*, cùm prohibet, imperativo vel subjunctivo jungitur: ut,

Ne temne quòd ultrò

Præferimus manibus vittas. Virg.

Tu ne quæsieris quem mihi, quem tibi

Finem Dî dederint. Hor.

143. Omnes voces quæ interrogationem meram exprimunt, indicativo junguntur: ut,

Tune id veritus es? Cic.

Num eum facti piget? Cic.

Quis fuit horrendos qui primus protulit enses? Tib.

DE RELATIVO.

144. *Qui* causam significans subjunctivum exigit: ut,
Clusini legatos Romam, qui auxilium à Senatu peterent, misere. Liv.

Voluptas non est digna ad quam sapiens respiciat. Sen.

145. Cùm vero relativa præpositio substantivi locum supplet, verbum in indicativo ponitur: ut,

Num alii oratores probantur à multitudine, alii ab iis qui intelligunt? (i. e. à sapientibus.) Cic.

Quoscunque de te queri audivi (i. e. omnes querentes) placavi. Cic.

146. Omnes voces indefinitè positæ, vel in obliquâ oratione, vel in sententiâ ab aliâ pendente, subjunctivum postulant: ut,

Innocentia est affectio talis animi quæ noceat nemini. Cic.

Cui scribam video. Cic.

*Experto credite, quantus
In clypeum assurgat, quo turbine torqueat hastam. Virg.*

PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

147. Præpositiones

Adversum adversus, cis citra, apud, ante, penesque,

Intra, infra, contra, supra, post, circiter, inter,

Circa circum, ultra, juxta, erga, præter, et extra,

Ob, prope, per, propter, versus, trans, pone, secundum, ad,
accusativum regunt: ut,

Quem penes arbitrium est. Hor.

Ter circum Iliacos raptaverat Hectora muros. Virg.

Propter aquas. Virg.

Amicitia propter se expetenda est. Cic.

Per mare pauperiem fugiens. Hor.

Ludi decem per dies facti sunt. Cic.

Per me unum effectum est ut libertas in civitate maneret. Cic.

Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragædias fecit. Cic.

Castra ad Cybistra locavi. Cic.

Aliquot post menses ad Cæsarem venit. Cic.

Post equitem sedet atra cura. Hor.

Præter castra Cæsar suas copias transduxit. Cæs.

Omnibus sententiis præter unam condemnatus est. Cic.

148. *A* (ante vocalem *ab*,) *absque, sine, coram, cum,*
æ e (ante vocalem *ex*,) *præ, pro,* ablativum regunt: ut,
A te principium, tibi desinet. Virg.

Tecum mihi discordia est. Hor.

Non sine Dîs animosus infans. Hor.

Non loqui præ mærore potuit. Cic.

Stabat pro templo et Capitolia celsa tenebat. Virg.

Cuncta pro hostibus erant. Tac.

E consulatu est profectus in Galliam. Cic.

Feliciter, et ex meâ sententiâ rempublicam gessit. Cic.

149. *In, super, sub, et subter* (quod tamen rarò invenitur,) pro sensu accusativum vel ablativum regunt: ut,

Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis. Hor.

In Senatum venit. Cic.

Lucus in arce fuit summâ. Ovid.

Super et Garamantas et Indos

Proferet imperium. Virg.

Multa super Priamo rogitans, super Hectore multa. Virg.

Manet sub Jove frigido venator. Hor.

Sub eas literas statim recitatæ sunt tuæ. Cic.

Multaque me fugiunt primis spectata sub annis. Ovid.

Exercitus ejus sub jugum missus est. Cæs.

Angusti subter fastigia tecti

Æneam duxit. Virg.

Subter densâ testudine tuti. Virg.

150. *Tenus* ablativum singularem, ablativum vel genitivum pluralem regit; et semper casum suum sequitur: ut,

Lateri capulo tenus abdidit ensem. Virg.

Et crurum tenus à mento palearia pendent. Virg.

Alterâ per jugulum pennis tenus acta sagitta est. Ovid.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

Dividitur Prosodia in tres partes, *Tonum*, *Spiritum*, et *Tempus*.

Hoc loco visum est nobis de *Tempore* tantùm tractare.

TEMPUS est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur[˘]; ut, *Dõmĩnũs*. Longum autem sic[¯]; ut, *cõntrã*.

Pes duarum syllabarum pluriumve constitutio est ex certâ Temporum observatione.

Pes duarum longarum syllabarum est spondæus: ut, *vĩrtũs*.

Longa syllaba, duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus, dactylum efficit; ut, *scribẽrẽ*.

SCANSIO est legitima versũs in singulos pedes commensuratio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*, et *Cæsura*.

I. *Synalæpha* est elisio vocalis in fine dictionis, ante alteram in initio sequentis: ut,

Sẽrã nĩmĩs vĩt' ẽst crãstĩnã, vĩv' hõdiẽ. Mart.
pro *vita*; *vive*.

At *heu* et *o* nunquam intercipiuntur.

II. *Ecthlipsis* est, quoties *m* cum suâ vocali perimitur proximâ dictione à vocali exorsâ: ut,

Mõnstr' hõrrẽnd', ĩnfõrm', ĩngẽns, cũ lũmẽn ãdẽmptũm.
Virg
pro *monstrum, horrendum, informe*.

III. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio : ut,

Seū lēntō fūērīnt ālveārīā vīmīnē tēxta. Virg.
quasi scriptum esset *alvaria*.

IV. *Diæresis* est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ dissectâ fiunt duæ : ut,

Dēbūērānt fūsōs ēvōlūssē sūōs. Ov. Ep.
evoluisse pro evolvisse.

V. *Cæsura* est, cūm post pedem absolutum syllaba brevis in fine dictionis extenditur : ut,

Pēctōribūs īnhāns spīrāntiā cōnsūlīt ēxta. Virg.

DE GENERIBUS VERSUUM.

VERSUS heroicus, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat ex sex pedibus ; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondæum peculiariter sibi vindicat ; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus : ut,

Tītūrē tū pātūlāe rēcūbāns sūb tēgmīnē fāgī. Virg.

Reperitur aliquando spondæus etiam in quinto loco : ut,

Cārā Dēūm sōhōlēs, māgnūm Jōvis īncrēmētūm. Virg.

Ultima cujuscunque versûs syllaba habetur communis.

VERSUS elegiacus, qui et *Pentametri* nomen habet, è duplici constat penthemimeri : quarum prior duos pedes, dactylicos, spondiacos, vel alterutros comprehendit, cum syllabâ longâ ; altera etiam duos pedes, sed omninò dactylicos, cum syllabâ item longâ : ut,

Rēs ēst sōllīcītī plēnā tīmōrīs āmor. Ovid. Epist.

PRIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eâdem dictione, ubique positione longa est: ut, *vēntus*, *āxis*, *patrīzo*.

II. Quòd si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens etiam positione longa erit: ut,

Mājōr sūm quām cui pōssīt fōrtūnā nōcēre.

Syllabæ *jor*, *sum*, *quam*, et *sit*, positione longæ sunt.

(a) At si prior dictio in vocalem brevem exeat, sequente à duabus consonantibus incipiente, interdum, sed rariùs, producitur: ut,

Fērtē cītī jērrūm, dātē tēlā, scāndītē mūros. Virg.

III. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquidâ, communis redditur: ut, *pātris*, *volūcris*: quæ tamen regula in compositis non obtinet: ut, *ādmīror*, *ābrīpio*, *sūbruo*, *ōbruo*.

VOCALIS ante alteram in eâdem dictione ubique brevis est: ut, *Dēus*, *mēus*, *tūus*, *pīus*.

1. Excipias genitivos in *ius*: ut, *unīus*, *illīus*, &c. ubi *i* communis reperitur; licèt in *alterīus* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi et dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut, *faciēi*: alioqui non; ut, *rēi*, *spēi*, *fidēi*.

Fi etiam in *fio* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut, *fīerem*, *fīeri*.

Omniā jām fīūnt, fīērī quæ pōssē nēgābam.

Dīus primam syllabam habet longam, *Dīana* communem.

Ohe, interjectio, priorem syllabam communem habet; *Eheu* penultimam semper producit.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Et alia nonnulla ex utroque genere, quæ relinquuntur studiosis inter legendum observanda.

COMPOSITA simplicium quantitatem sequuntur: ut, à *lĕgo lĕgis, parlĕgo*; à *lĕgo lĕgas, allĕgo*; à *pŏtens, impŏtens*; à *sŏlor, consŏlor*.

Excipiuntur tamen hæc brevia à longis enata: ut, *dejĕro, pejĕro*; à *jŭro*; *innŭba, pronŭba*, à *nŭbo*.

OMNE præteritum dissyllabum priorem habet longam: ut, *lĕgi, ĕmi, mŏvi*.

1. Excipias tamen, *bĭbi, dĕdi, scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti, tŭli*, et *fĭdi* à *findo*.

2. Primam præteriti geminantia primam brevem habent: ut, *cĕcĭdi*, à *cado*; *cĕcĭdi*, à *cædo*; *dĭdici, fĕfelli, mŏmordi, pĕpendi, pŭpugi, tĕtendi, tĕtigi, tŏtondi, tŭtudi*.

SUPINUM dissyllabum priorem habet longam: ut, *vĭsum, lĕtum, lŏtum, mŏtum*.

Excipe *dĕtum, ĭtum, lĭtum, rĕtum, rŭtum, sĕtum, sĭtum, stĕtum*, et *cĭtum* à *cio cĭes*; nam *cĭtum* à *cio cis*, quartæ, priorem habet longam.

Penultima tertiæ personæ pluralis perfecti activi in *-erunt* desinens, si antepenultima brevis sit, communis habenda est.

ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. *A* Finita producuntur : ut, *amā*, *contrā*, *ergā*.

Excipias, *itā*, *quā*, *eiā*. Item omnes casus in *a*, cujuscunque fuerint generis, numeri, aut declinationis ; præter vocativos à Græcis in *as* ; ut, *ô Æneā* : et ablativum primæ declinationis : ut, *musā*.

II. In *b*, *d*, *t*, puris desinentia, brevia sunt : *ut*, *ŭb*, *ăd*, *capŭt*.

III. In *c* desinentia producuntur : ut, *āc*, *sīc*, et *hīc*, adverbium.

Sed *făc*, *nēc*, *donēc*, corripuntur.

Prohomen *hīc*, et neutrum ejus *hōc*, modò non sit ablativi casûs, communia sunt.

IV. *E* finita brevia sunt : ut, *marĕ*, *penĕ*, *legĕ*, *scribĕ*.

1. Excipiendæ sunt omnes voces quintæ inflectionis in *e* ; ut, *fidĕ*, *diĕ*, unà cum particulis indè enatis ; ut, *hodiĕ*, *quotidiĕ*, *pridiĕ*, *postridiĕ* : item *quarĕ*, et si qua sunt similia.

2. Et secundæ item personæ singulares secundæ conjugationis ; ut, *docĕ*, *movĕ* : præter *cavĕ*, quod ultimam plerumque corripit.

Producuntur etiam monosyllaba in *e* ; ut, *mĕ*, *tĕ*, *sĕ* : præter *quĕ*, *nĕ*, *vĕ*, conjunctiones encliticas.

Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectivis secundæ declinationis deducta, *e* longum habent: ut, *pulchrē*, *doctē*, *valdē* pro *validē*.

Quibus accedunt *fermē*, *ferē*: *benē* tamen et *malē* corripuntur omninò.

Postremò, quæ à Græcis per η scribuntur, naturâ producuntur, cujuscunque fuerint casûs, generis, aut numeri: ut, *Lethē*, *Anchisē*, *cetē*, *Tempē*.

V. *I* finita longa sunt: ut, *dominī*, *magistrī*, *amarī*.

Præter *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ubī*, *ibī*, quæ sunt communia.

Nisī et *quasī* corripuntur.

Corripuntur quoque dativi et vocativi singulares nominum priorum in *is*, à Græcis derivatorum, quorum genitivus penultimâ brevi crescit: ut, dativi *Minoidī*, *Palladī*, *Phyllidī*; vocativi *Alexī*, *Amaryllī*, *Daphnī*.

VI. *L* finita corripuntur: ut, *animāl*, *Hannibāl*, *mēl*, *pugīl*, *consūl*.

Præter *nīl* (contractum à *nihil*,) *sāl*, et *sōl*.

VII. *N* finita corripuntur: ut, *ān*, *carmēn*, *īn*, *Iliōn*, *Itīn*.

Excipiuntur *quīn*, *nōn*; et nomina pauca à Græcis derivata, quæ penultimam genitivi producunt: ut, *delphīn*, *delphīnis*; *Xenophōn*, *Xenophōntis*.

Producuntur quoque accusativi masculini primæ declinationis in *ān* et *ēn*: ut, *Æneān*, *Anchisēn*; et accusativi fœminini in *ēn* et *rān*: ut, *Pēnēlōpēn*, *Electrān*: cæteri fœminini in *ūn* corripuntur: ut, *Maiān*, *Iphigenīān*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

1. Excipiuntur nomina in *es* tertiæ inflexionis, quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripunt: ut, *milēs*, *segēs*, *divēs*. Sed *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, et *pēs*, unà cum compositis, ut *bipēs*, *tripēs*, longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque, à *sum*, unà cum compositis, corripitur; ut, *potēs*, *adēs*, *prodēs*, *obēs*: quibus *penēs* adjungi potest.

3. Item neutra, et nominativi plurales Græcorum: ut, *hippomanēs*, *cacoëthēs*. *Cyclopēs*, *Naiadēs*.

III. *Is* finita brevia sunt: ut, *Parīs*, *panīs*, *tristīs*, *hilarīs*.

1. Excipe obliquos casus plurales in *is*, qui producuntur: ut, *musīs*, *mensīs* à *mensa*, *dominīs*, *templīs*; et *quīs* pro *quibus*.

2. Item producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis: ut, *Samnīs*, *Salamīs*; genitivo, *Samnītis*, *Salamīnis*.

3. Et monosyllaba item omnia; ut, *vīs*, *līs*: præter *īs* et *quīs* nominativos, et *bīs* apud Ovidium.

Secunda persona singularis præsentis activi quartæ conjugationis producit *īs*; ut, *audīs*: sic *possīs*, *velīs*, *nolīs*, *malīs*.

Secundæ personæ singulares futuri secundi activi indicativi, et perfecti subjunctivi, *īs* commune faciunt: ut, *fecerīs*, *dederīs*.

(a.) Porrò in his temporibus secunda persona pluralis penultimam communem habet: ut, *dixerītis*, *transierītis*.

Gratīs et *forīs* ultimam producant.

IV. *Os* finita producuntur: ut, *honōs*, *nepōs*, *dominōs*, *servōs*.

Præter *compōs*, *impōs*, *ōs ossis*, et *exōs*.

Et nomina propria derivata à Græcis in os : ut, *Delös*, *Chaös*, *Palladös*, *Phyllidös*.

v. *Us* finita corripuntur : ut, *familüs*, *regiüs*, *tempüs*, *amamüs*.

Excipiuntur producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis : ut, *salüs*, *tellüs* ; genitivo, *salütis*, *tellüris*.

Longæ sunt etiam omnes voces quartæ inflectionis in *us*, præter nominativum et vocativum singulares : ut, gen. sing. *manüs* ; nom. accus. voc. plur. *manüs*.

His accedunt etiam monosyllaba : ut, *crüs*, *thüs*, *müs*, *süs*.

Et Græca item per ους diphthongum, cujuscunque fuerint casûs : ut, nom. *Panthüs*, *Melampüs* ; gen. *Supphüs*, *Cliüs*.

vi. *Ys* finita corripuntur : ut, *Itÿs*.

XI. *U* finita producuntur omnia : ut, *manū*, *genū*, *amatū*, *diū*.

XII. *Y* finita corripuntur : ut, *Tiphÿ*.

PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS ;

OR,

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS,

CONSTRUED.

I. PROPRIA proper names quæ which tribuuntur are assigned maribus to the male kind dicas you may call mascula masculines ; ut as, sunt are Divorum the names of the heathen Gods, Mars the God of war, Bacchus the God of wine, Apollo the God of wisdom ; Virorum the names of men ; ut as Cato, a noble Roman, Virgilius the Poet Virgil ; Fluviorum the names of Rivers ; ut as, Tiberis the Tiber, Orontes, a river by Antioch ; Mensium the names of months, ut as October the month October ; Ventorum the names of winds, ut as Libis the south-west wind, Notus the south wind, Auster the south wind ; Montium the names of mountains, ut as Ossa mount Ossa ; Alp̄is tamen but the Alps est is muliebris feminine, et and C̄eta mount C̄eta, Cyllene mount Cyllene, Rhodope mount Rhodope, et and Ætna mount Ætna gravis terrible cæcis ignibus with hidden fires ; Pelion mount Pelion est neutrum is neuter ; Soracte mount Soracte, Ceraunia the Ceraunian mountains neutra are neuter. (v. 1—7.)

II. PROPRIA nomina proper names referentia denoting fœmineum sexum the female sex tribuuntur are given fœmineo generi to the feminine gender ; sive whether sunt they are Dearum the names of Goddesses, ut as Juno Jupiter's wife, Venus the Goddess of beauty ; Muliebria the names of women, ut as Anna Anne, Philotis Philote ; Urbium the names of cities, ut as Elis a city of Peloponnesus, Opus a city of Locris : Regionum the names of countries, ut as Græcia



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

epicœna nouns of the epicene gender; quibus to which vox ipsa the termination itself feret will give genus aptum the right gender. (v. 29—31.)

Multa etiam many also dabunt will give commune genus the common gender; ut as, lepus a hare, anser a goose, vespertilio a bat, mus a mouse, grus a crane, bos an ox or cow, canis a dog, atque and elephanta an elephant. Sus a pig, tigris a tiger, et and anguis a snake jungunt join fœmineum the feminine gender mari to the masculine; et and serpens a serpent, damæque and deer, et and talpæ moles egent lumine deprived of sight. (v. 32—35.)

IV. DECLENSION I.

As, es, words ending in as and es erunt will be mascula masculines: inflexio prima the first declension habebit will have a, e, words ending in a or e fœminei generis of the feminine gender, nisi unless sensus the sense prohibet forbids. Boreas the north wind, satrapes a satrap, mas are masculine; litera a letter muliebris is feminine, Circe and Circe. Sed but scriba a scribe mas genus is the masculine gender, sic so scurra a buffoon, athleta an athlete, lanista a fencing master. (v. 36—39.)

V. DECLENSION II.

Secunda the second declension dat gives um nouns ending in um neutrale neuter, us et er nouns ending in us and er plerumque generally mas masculine. Sic so regnum a kingdom neutrum is neuter, dominus a master mas is masculine, atque and magister a teacher. Sed but quæ dicta supra sunt what has been said before dabunt will give legenti the reader pauca a few words excipienda to be excepted; nam for malus an apple arbor being a tree muliebris erit will be feminine, et Abydos and Abydos nomen the name urbis of a city: sic so alvus a belly, humus the ground, colus a distaff, atque and carbasus linen, et and vannus a winnowing machine; sic so phaselus a boat nota known Nilo to the Nile.—Pauca etiam a few also deducta derived Græcis from the Greeks occurrent will occur, papyrus paper, antidotus an antidote, costus the herb zedoary, diphthongus a diphthong, byssus fine flax, et

and illa those words quot as many as os breve os short claudit ends; ceu as, Delos Delos, Sestos Sestos, et and Isthmos an isthmus; sed but virus poison, pelagus the sea neutralia are neuter, et and adjice add vulgus the common people, quamvis although interdum sometimes ponas you may class hoc this inter mascula among masculines: non genus est ullum there is not any gender quo in which penus provisions non invenietur will not be found. (v. 40—51.)

VI. DECLENSION III.—MASCULINES.

Crede consider voces the words quas which tertia inflexio the third declension reddit affords mares masculine lectori to the reader, si if or, os, er, o quoque and o claudit terminate rectum the nominative case; vel or quas those which es finit ends, quibusque and in which genitivus the genitive case crescit increases: sic so, honor honour, atque and heros a hero, crater a cup, sermoque and a discourse, tapesque and a carpet: at but soror a sister atque and uxor a wife muliebria semper are always feminine, et and arbor a tree; sed but cor a heart, marmor marble, ador corn, et and æquor the sea neutralia semper are always neuter. Sic so cos a whetstone est is foeminei generis of the feminine gender, dosque and a dowry, sed but os, seu whether oris habet it makes oris (meaning a face), sive ossis or ossis (meaning a bone,) crit will be neutrale neuter, chaosque and chaos, et and melos melody; atque alia and other words deducta derived a linguâ Pelasgâ from the Greek language. Tuber, fructus when meaning the fruit, mas est is masculine, sed but erit it will be muliebris feminine ut as arbor the tree: linter a boat communis is common; ver spring neutrum is neuter, so are verber a stripe, et and uber a teat, atque and cadaver a carcass, iter a journey, spinther a buckle, quibus adjice to which add tuber a mushroom, atque and quot nomina as many nouns as finita per er ending in er notant denote plantas plants. Excipias quoque you may except also, lector o reader, hyperdisyllabon a word of more than two syllables in do ending in do, et quot and as many words as io claudit ends, deducta being derived verbis from verbs; velut as libido lust, formidoque and fear; sic so dictio speaking, lectio reading; porro moreover caro flesh est is muliebris feminine, atque and echo echo,

atque *and* Argo *the Argo* et *and* imago *an image*; cupido *love* est *is* ritè *properly* muliebris *feminine*, cùm *when* notat *it speaks of* affectum *the passion*, et tamen *and yet* vates *poets* interdum *sometimes* cogunt hoc *press this* in mascula *into the list of masculines*. Disces *you will learn* pauca *that a few* finita per es *ending in es* foeminei generis *are of the feminine gender*, licet *although* crescentia *increasing in the genitive case*; merges *a fork-ful*, mercesque *and a reward*, quiesque *and rest*, et *and* teges *a mat*, atque *and* seges *a cornfield*; quadrupes *a quadruped* communis *is common*, et *and* ales *a bird*, atque *and* obses *a hostage*, comes *a companion*, atque *and* hospes *a host, or hostess*, quibus *to which* adijce *add* princeps *a prince, or princess*. (v. 52—74.)

VII. DECLENSION III.—FEMININES.

Omne quod *every word which* exit in ends in as, is, ys, aus, x, es quoque *and es*, quando *when* non crescit *it does not increase* genitivo *in the genitive case*, erit *will be* muliebre *feminine*; superque *and moreover* s liquidâ præeunte s *when preceded by a liquid præbet idem genus gives the same gender*, memento *remember*; sic so pietas *piety*, fraus *fraud*, atque *and* chlamys *a cloak*, navisque *and a ship*, ratisque *and a ship*, pax *peace*, radix *a root*, nubes *a cloud*, et *and* hyems *winter*, mors *death*; excipe *except* pauca *a few*; as assis *a pound weight* mas erit *will be masculine*, compôstaque *and its compounds*; elephasque *and an elephant* mas *is masculine*, et *and* quicquid Græcum *whatever word originally Greek*, habet -antis *makes -ontis in the genitive*, ut as Atlas *Atlas*, atque *and* gigas *a giant*, adamas *adamant*, vas vadis *a surety*, e sensu *because of the sense*, est *is* mas *is masculine*, vas vasis *a vessel*, neutrum *is neuter*; sic so fas *right* neutrale *is neuter*, nefasque *and wrong*. Videbis quoque *you will see also* multa *many* nouns is finita *ending in is* mascula *masculine*, pulvis *dust*, et *and* pollis *bran*, cucumis *a cucumber*, sanguis *blood*, lapis *a stone*, amnis *a river*, et *and* axis *an axletree*, glis *a dormouse*, caulis *a stalk*, cassis, cùm non crescit genitivo, *when, meaning a net, it does not increase in the genitive*, (cassis enim *for a helmet, à quo from which* cassis venit *comes* est *is* muliebre *feminine*) collis *a hill*, fascis *a faggot*, follis *a bellows*, funis *a rope*, pestis *a plague*, et *and* ensis *a*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

masculine, et and stirps a stock habetur is accounted communis common. (v. 75—110.)

VIII. DECLENSION III.—NEUTERS.

Quæ *the nouns which a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us, claudunt end, leguntur are found in reading neutra to be neuter; vides you may see exempla examples; poema a poem, et and mare the sea, misy vitriol, sinapi mustard, alec pickle, lac milk, mel honey, animalque and an animal; carmen a verse et and adde add caput a head, laquear a ceiling, jecur the liver. adjice add tempus time. Sol the sun, mugil a mullet, mascula are masculine; sic so sal salt plerumque generally, pluralique and in the plural number sales wit semper always. Præsul a president et and exul an exile et and vigil a sentinel communia are common; fidicen a harpist, ren a kidney, pecten a comb, mascula are masculines; et and addas you may add paucissima a very few deducta derived a Græcâ linguâ from the Greek language, delphin a dolphin, lichen ringworm, et and pæan a song in honour of Apollo; primâque e lege and according to the first rule in the book, Cithæron mount Cithæron, sindon muslin, atque and icon an image, et and Amazon an Amazon, muliebria sunt are feminine; et and alcyones king-fishers, quæ which word rarius exstant is seldom found numero primo in the singular number. Par, significans meaning socium a mate, mas is masculine; turtur a turtle-dove mas is masculine, et and augur a soothsayer, fur a thief, vultur a vulture, sic so furfur bran: pauca a few in us ending in us muliebria are feminine, ut as virtus virtue, incus an anvil, tellus the earth, palus a marsh, atque and juvenus youth, atque and pecus a flock, making pecudis in the genitive case; dans when it makes pecoris meaning a herd accipe take it neutrum as neuter.* (v. 111—125.)

IX. DECLENSION IV.

U neutrum a noun ending in u is neuter, ut as cornu a horn; us a noun ending in us mas is masculine, ceu as cursus a course, et and actus an act of a play; porticus a portico, atque and tribus a tribe, muliebria are feminine, acusque and a needle, domusque and a house, et and manus a hand, et and

quercus an oak, sic so idus the ides of the month cum quinquatribus and a feast in honour of Minerva called Quinquatrus; sensus the sense monstrat shows anus an old woman, nurus a daughter-in-law, et and socrus a mother-in-law muliebria to be feminine. (v. 126—129.)

X. DECLENSION V.

Quinta the fifth declension dat gives muliebre genus the feminine gender, ut as spes hope; at but dies a day est is numero plurali in the plural number mas tantum masculine only; primo in the singular number commune it is common. (v. 130, 131.)

XI. ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVA adjectives habentia having duntaxat only unam vocem one termination, ut as, felix happy, audax bold, retinent keep genus omne every gender sub unâ under that one ending. Si if cadunt they fall sub under geminâ voce a double termination, velut as, omnis, et and omne all, vox prior the former word est is commune duûm the common of two genders, vox altera the second word neutrum is neuter: at but si if variant they vary tres voces the three endings, ut as, sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred; vox prima the first word est is mas masculine, altera the second foemina feminine, tertia the third neutrum is neuter. (v. 132—137.)

Sunt queis there are some in which plurales casus the plural cases in a ending in a non adhibentur are not used, pauper poor, inops poor, puber of ripe age, sospes safe, cum with degener degenerate, uber fruitful, et and dives rich, locuples rich, memor mindful, immemor unmindful, atque and superstes surviving. (v. 138—140.)

NOUNS HETEROCLITE,

OR,

IRREGULAR,

CONSTRUED.

QUÆ *those nouns which variant change genus their gender aut or flexum declension, quæcunque and whatsoever nouns novato ritu after a new manner deficient fall short ve or superant exceed in declining, sunt let them be called Heteroclita Heteroclites, or nouns irregular.* (v. 1, 2.)

CERNIS *you see hæc these nouns variantia varying genus the gender in variis numeris in the different numbers.* (v. 3.)

Nam for hæc these words maria masculine primo numero in the singular number sunt neutra are neuter secundo in the plural: tartarus horribilis horrid hell; sic so sibilus a hiss, intubus endive, exstant are seen. At but jocus a jest addit utrumque genus adds both genders plurali numero to the plural number, et and locus a place:—hæc these words primo muliebria are feminine in the singular, neutra neuter secundo in the plural; Pergamos Troy, et and ostrea the oyster exquirenda to be sought lautis cœnis for rich suppers, carbasus and linen:—hæc these words habebunt will have neutrum the neuter gender primo in the singular number, mas the masculine altero in the other; et both siser a parsnip, et and cœlum heaven, Argosque and Argos amatum loved Junoni by Juno. Rastrum a rake exstat exists genere utroque in each gender plurali in the plural, et and frenum a bridle, quin moreover epulum a feast primo in the singular, ast but epulæ, leguntur is read plurale in the plural. (v. 4—12.)

PROPAGO *the stock quæ which sequitur follows est is a nca defective casu in case, numerove or in number.* (v. 13.)



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ture, et and virus poison, sanguis blood, plebs the people, atque and ignobile vulgus the mean common people, cum paucis aliis with a few others; sic so nomina propria cuncta all proper names. (v. 30—37.)

MASCULA *these masculines sunt are contenta confined numero secundo to the plural number tantùm only, manes ghosts, majores ancestors, cancelli lattices, liberi children, et and antes the fore-ranks of vines, primores chiefs, proceres nobles, fasti simul also annals, atque and minores posterity, inferi the gods below, item also superi the gods above, lemures spectres, quibus to which adde add penates household gods, et and loca names of places plurali of the plural number, quales as que both Gabii a city in Italy que and Locri the inhabitants of Locris, et and quæcunque whatever nouns similis rationis of like nature legas you may read passim in authors.* (v. 38—43.)

Hæc *these nouns sunt are* *fœminei generis of the feminine gender, que and numeri secundi of the plural number; exuviæ anything stript off from the body, phaleræ horse-trappings, grates thanks, et and ineptiæ follies, et and idus the ides of a month, blanditiæ caresses, induciæ a truce, simul also que both insidiæ an ambush, que and minæ threats, excubiæ watch by day and night, nonæ the nones of a month, nugæ trifles, tricæque and toys, calendæ the calends of a month, quisquiliæ the sweepings or refuse of any thing, thermæ a hot bath, cunæ a cradle, diræ curses, que and exequiæ funeral rites, feriæ holidays, et and inferiæ sacrifices performed to the dead, sic so primitiæque both the first fruits of the year, plagæque and nets. Deliciæ delight, tenebræque and darkness, et and valvæ folding-doors, divitiæque and riches, item also nuptiæ a marriage, et and lactes the small guts: Thebæ Thebes et and Athenæ Athens addantur may be added, quod genus of which sort invenias you may find et also nomina plura more names locorum of places.* (v. 44—52.)

Hæc *neutra these nouns neuter pluralia of the plural number leguntur are read rariùs seldom primo in the singular; mœnia the walls of a city, cum with tesquis rough and desert places, præcordia the midriff of the body, lustra the dens ferarum of wild beasts, arma arms, mapalia Numidian cottages, sic so bellaria junkets, munia an office or charge, castra a camp;*

funus a funeral petit requires *justa solemnities*, et and *virgo a virgin* petit requires *sponsalia espousals*; *disertus an eloquent man* amat loves *rostra the pulpit*, *puerique and children* gestant carry *crepundia rattles*, *infantesque and infants* colunt *cunabula lie in cradles*; *angur a soothsayer* consulit consults *exta the entrails*, *piæ puellæ pious maidens* connectunt weave *sacra sarta sacred garlands*. *Festa the feasts deûm of the gods*, ceu as *Bacchanalia feasts dedicated to Bacchus*, poterunt will be able *jungi to be joined*. Quòd si and if *leges you shall read plura more*, licet reponas you may place them quoque also *hâc classe in this rank*. (v. 53—61.)

Porro moreover *invenies tu you will find*, *lector o reader*, *nomina pauca a few nouns secundæ of the second declension* *sumentia taking etiam also quosdam casus some cases quartæ of the fourth*, atque and *præcipue particularly dedignantia disdaining fines is atque e the terminations is and e*; ut as, *laurus a bay tree*, necnon and *ficus a fig*, *domus a house*, atque *pinus and lofty pine*, et and *colus a distaff*, et and *cornus a cornel tree*, *cupressusque and the cypress* *invisa hated vivis by the living*. (v. 62—66.)

AS IN PRÆSENTI, &c.

OR,

THE RULES FOR VERBS,

CONSTRUED.

I. AS in præsentī a verb making as in the present tense format forms perfectum the perfect tense in avi: ut as, no nas to swim navi, vocito vocitas to call often vocitavi. Deme except lavo to wash lavi, juvo to help juvi, quin moreover cubo to lie semper dat always makes cubui, seco to cut dat makes secui, mico to shine reddit gives micui, sic so frico to rub dat makes fricui, domo to tame dat makes domui, a from sono to sound sonui formatur is formed, tonoque and to thunder generabit will make tonui. Adde tibi add crepo to crack, quod which makes crepui, veto to forbid, quod which dat makes vetui. Interdum sometimes neco to kill dat makes necui, plerumque usually necavi, applico to apply sæpius dabit will oftener give applicui, rariùs more seldom -avi; at but supplico to supplicate multiplico to multiply semper formantur are always formed in -avi. Do das to give vult will formare form ritè by custom dedi, sto stas to stand steti. (v. 1—11.)

II.-ES in præsentī a verb making es in the present tense format forms perfectum the perfect tense dans ui by ui; ut as nigreo nigres to grow black nigrui: moneo to advise dat makes monui, et and languero to languish fugiens avoiding geminum u the double u habebit will have langui. Sed but ingenuus puer the well-bred boy videbit will see multa many words excipienda to be excepted. Veo, fit becomes vi, ut as moveo to move movi, caveo quoque also to beware of cavi, ferveo item also to be hot habebit will have fervi, sed but sæpe often et also fervui. Fleo fles to weep dat makes fievi, neo to spin nevi, deleo to efface format forms delevi, exoleo to fade, et verbum simile omne and every similar word dat makes -evi. Compleo to fill format forms complevi, repleoque and to fill replevi;



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Sco fit *becomes* vi, ut as *pasco to feed* pavi; attamen *but* inde profectum *its compound* compesco *to check* format *forms* compescui, et *and* adjice *add* disco *to learn* quod *which* semper *always* format *forms* didici, poscoque *and to ask* forms posci.—Verba inceptiva *inceptive verbs* sequuntur *follow* formam *the form* simplicium *of the simple verbs* from which they are derived, nam *for* caleo *to be warm* format *forms* calui,calescoque *and to begin to be warm* makes also calui; glisco *to grow*, atque *and* fatisco *to split* jactant *boast of* perfectum nullum *no perfect tense*, cum paucis aliis *with a few others* rite profectis *regularly derived* a nomine *from a noun*.

(v. 45—51.)

Do fit *becomes* si, ut as claudio *to shut* clausi, cedo *to yield* geminans s *doubling the s* dat *makes* cessi; pauca *a few* dabunt *will make* di, ut as scando *to climb*, prehendo *to take*, accendo *to inflame*, cudo *to hammer*, mando *to eat*, defendo *to defend*, edo *to eat*, pando *to lay open*, et *and* strido *to creak*, sideo *to sit*; findo *to cleave*, et *and* fundo *to pour* abjiciunt n *throw away n*, inde thence come fidi, fudi; rudo *to brag* dat *gives* rudivi, rarum *a rare form*: quinetiam *moreover* paucis *in a few* words syllaba prima *the first syllable* geminatur *is doubled*, pendo *to weigh* makes pependi, tendo *to bend* tetendi, cædo *to beat* cēcīdi, et *and* cado *to fall* dat *gives* cēcīdi, tundo *to beat*, tutudi; ultima vero *but the last syllable* plerumque *usually* geminatur *is doubled* in natis *in words compounded* a *of* do *to give*, ut as edo *to utter*, abdo *to hide*, condo *to build*, reddoque *and to restore*, et *and* cætera *the rest* formant *form* didi: videbis tamen *yet you will see* abscondo *that to hide* formare *forms* abscondi, fido *to trust* habebit *will have* formam *the form* passivi *of the passive*, fisis sum. (v. 52—63.)

Go, & is made xi, ut as jungo *to join* junxi; sed *but* r *the letter r* ante *before* go, vult *will have* si; ut as spargo *to sprinkle* sparsi; lego *to read* legi, et *and* ago *to act* facit *makes* egi; et *and* frango *to break* fregi, pango *pro for* figere *to fasten* panxi; inde tamen compôsta *but its compounds* semper tibi dabunt *will always give you* -pegi; cùm *when* cernis *you see* pepigi, præsens *the present tense* plerumque *usually* est *is* paciscor *to covenant*; tangoto *touch* dat *gives* tetigi, pungo *to prick* &abit *will give* ordine *in order* pupugi, sed *but* compôsta *its*

compounds make -punxi; ambigo to doubt, vergo to incline, carent are without perfecto the perfect tense. (v. 64—70.)

Guo, format tibi *forms xi; ceu as restinguo to extinguish restinxi.* (v. 71.)

Ho, fit *is made xi; ceu as traho to draw traxi docet shews, et and veho to carry vexi.* (v. 72.)

Lo, fit *is made ui; ceu as colo to till colui: excipe except psallo to play upon an instrument psalli; excello to excel sequitur follows legem the regular rule, sed but percello to strike habebit will have perculi; pello to drive away dat makes pepuli, fallo to deceive fefelli, vello to pluck dat tibi gives you sæpius usually velli, est ubi sometimes vulsi.* (v. 73—76.)

. Mo, fit *becomes mpsi; ceu as como to deck the hair compsi, at but emo to buy facit makes emi. Deinde then vomoque both to vomit, fremoque and to roar, gemoque and to groan, tremoque and to tremble sequuntur follow; quæ which dabunt will give perfecta their perfects per ui in ui; et and premo to press dabit will give pressi.* (v. 77—79.)

No, fit *becomes vi; ceu as sino to permit sivi; quin moreover cerno to see ordine mutato changing the order of its letters makes crevi, sic so does sperno to despise, sternoque and to strew makes stravi, gigno to beget, pono to put, cano to sing, dant make genui, posui, cecini; cujus compôsta whose compounds dant ui make ui, ut as concino to sing together concinui.* (v. 80—83.)

Po, fit *becomes psi; ut as sculpo to carve sculpsi, carpo quoque also to gather makes carpsi; sed but rumpo to break semper always format makes rupi, strepo to roar strepui.* (v. 84, 85.)

Quo, fit *becomes xi; ceu as coquo to cook coxi, excipe except linquo to leave liqui.* (v. 86.)

Ro, fit *becomes si, sæpe s geminato s being often doubled, quod which gero to carry monstrat shews, dans making gessi; tero to rub dat makes trivi, curroque and to run makes curri, quæro to seek quæsivi, neque enim nor let fero to bear prætereatur be passed over, quod which habet has tuli, sero to sow dat makes sevi, sed but compôsta ejus its compounds insero to ingraft or insert among, consero to plant together or to connect, dant make et both -sevi et and -serui, formâ the form*

mutatâ *varying* ad sensum *with the sense*; sed *but* desero *to desert* item *also* assero *to assert* formant *form* ui tantum *only ui*; furo *to rage* dat *gives* nullum præteritum *no perfect.tense.*
(v. 87—93.)

So, fit *becomes* si; ut *as* viso *to go to see* visi; adjice *add* pinso *to grind* pinsi, item *also* making pinsui; depso *quoque* *also* *to knead* depsui; at *but* omne -esso *every word ending in -esso* dat *gives* -essivi, ut *as* arcesso *to send for*, incesso *to attack*, atque *and* lacesso *to provoke* probat *proves.*
(v. 94—96.)

To, fit *is made* ti; ut *as* verito *to turn* verti; sic *so* verso *ordine* *changing the order of the letters* obstiti *fluit* *proceeds* ab *from* obsisto *to oppose*, adde *add* insisto *to stand upon*, resisto *to resist*; mitto *to send* dat *gives* misi, peto *to ask* vult *formare* *will form* petivi, sterto *to snore* habet *has* stertui, meto *to reap* messui: ab *from* -ecto fit *is made* -exi, ut *as* flecto *to bend* flexi; necto *to weave* dat *gives* nexui, habetque *and it has* nexi, sic *so* pecto *to comb* dat *gives* pexui, habet *quoque* *and also* has pexi.
(v. 97—102.)

Vo, fit *is made* vi; ut *as* volvo *to roll* volvi; excipe *except* vivo *to live* vixi.
(v. 103.)

Xo, habet *has* xui; ut *as* texo *to weave*, quod *which* habebit *will have* texui, monstrat *sheweth.*
(v. 104.)

Cio, fit *is made* ci; ut *as* facio *to do* feci; quoque *also* jacio *to cast* jeci: allicio *to allure* allexi, elicio *to elicit* format tibi *gives you* elicui. Aspicio *to behold* makes aspexi, sic *so* conspicio *to see* inspicioque *and to inspect.*
(v. 105—107.)

Dio, fit *is made* di; ut *as* fodio *to dig* fodi. }
Gio, fit *is made* gi; ceu *as* fugio *to fly* fugi. } (v. 108.)

Pio, fit *is made* pi; ut *as* capio *to take* cepi; ecce *behold* cupio *to desire* cupivi, et *and* rapio *to snatch* rapui, sapio *to savour or taste* sapui, atque *and* sapivi.
(v. 109, 110.)

Pario *to bring forth* dat *gives* pepereri, concutio *to shake* dat *gives* concussi.
(v. 111.)

Denique *finally*, Uo fit *is made* ui; ut *as* statuo *to erect* statui; pluo *to rain* format *formeth* pluvi, sive *or* plui, sed *but* struo *to build* makes struxi, fluo *to flow* fluxi.
(v. 112, 113.)

Compositum *the compound verb* sequitur *follows* simplex



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Composita *the compounds* à *of* *verbis the verbs* calco *to tread*, salto *to leap or dance*, mutant *change* a per u a *into u*; conculco *to tread upon*, inculco *to tread in*, resulto *to rebound*, demonstrant *shew* id *that* tibi *to you*. (v. 135, 136.)

Composita *the compounds* à *of* claudo *to shut*, quatio *to shake*, lavo *to wash*, rejiciunt a *cast away a*; occludo *to shut against*, excludo *to shut out*, à *from* claudo *to shut*, docet *teaches* id *this*; que *and* percutio *to strike*, excutio *to strike out*, à *from* quatio *to shake*; à *from* lavo *to wash*, nata *the compounds* proluo *to drench*, diluo *to wash out*.

(v. 137 — 139.)

Plaudo *to applaud* mutat *changes* au *into* o, quod *which* displodo *to burst* monstrat tibi *shews you*. (v. 140.)

VII. SI *if* componas *you compound* hæc *these verbs*, ago *to act*, emo *to buy*, sedeo *to sit*, rego *to rule*, frango *to break*, et *and* capio *to take*, jacio *to cast*, lacio *to allure*, specio *to behold*, premo *to press*, pango *to fasten*, sibi mutant *they change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* præsentis *of the present tense* in i *into i*, nunquam *never* præteriti *of the perfect tense*; ceu *as of* frango *to break*, refringo *to break open*, makes refregi; incipio *to begin* incepi, à *of* capio *to take*: sed *but* pauca *let a few* notentur *be marked*; namque *for* perago *to finish* sequitur *follows* sium *simplex its simple verb*, que *and* satago *to be busy*; atque *and* dego *to live*, ab *from* ago *to act*, dat *makes* degi, cogo *to bring together* coegi; sic *so* à *from* rego *to rule*, pergo *to go forward*, makes perrexi, quoque *and* surgo *to rise* vult *will have* surrexi; mediâ *syllabâ the middle syllable* præsentis *of the present tense* ademptâ *being taken away*. (v. 141 — 149.)

Ista quatuor composita *these four compound verbs* à *of* pango *to fix or fasten* retinent a *keep a*, depango *to fix in the ground*, oppango *to fasten against*, circumpango *to fasten about*, atque *and* repango *to fasten again*. (v. 150, 151.)

Facio *to do* variat *changeth* nil *nothing*, nisi *unless* præposito præeunte a *preposition goes before*: olfacio *to smell out* docet *teaches* id *that*, cum *with* calfacio *to make hot*, que *and* inficio *to infect*. (v. 152, 153.)

Nata *the compounds* à *of* lego *to read*, re, per, præ, sub,

trans, ad, præëunte *going before*, servant *keep* vocalem *the vowel* præsentis *of the present tense*; cætera *the rest* mutant *change it* in i *into i*; de quibus *of which* hæc *these* tantùm *only*, intelligo *to understand*, diligo *to love*, negligo *to neglect*, faciunt *make* præteritum *their perfect tense* lexi; reliqua omnia *all the rest* legi. (v. 154—157.)

VIII NUNC *now* discas *you may learn* formare *to form* supinum *the supine* ex præterito *from the perfect tense*.

(v. 158.)

Unum perfectum *one perfect tense* in bi, bibi *to drink*, vult formare *will form* bibitum. (v. 159.)

Ci, fit *is made* ctum, ut *as* vici *to overcome* victum, testatur *shews*, et *and* ici *to smite* dans *making* ictum, feci *to do* factum, quoque *also* jeci *to cast* jactum. (v. 160-1.)

Di, fit *is made* sum; ut *as* vidi *to see* visum: quædam *some* geminant s *double s*; ut *as* pandi *to open* passum, sedi *to sit* sessum, adde *add* scidi *to cut* quod *which* dat *makes* scissum, atque *and* fidi *to cleave* fissum, quoque *also* fodi *to dig* fossum. (v. 162—164.)

Prima syllaba *the first syllable* non geminatur *is not doubled* ullis supinis *in any supines*: idque *and this* totondi *to clip or shear*, dans *making* tonsum, docet *shews*, atque *and* cecidi *to beat*, quod *which* maketh cæsum, et *and* cecidi *to fall*, quod *which* dat *maketh* casum, atque *and* tetendi *to bend*, quod *which* maketh tensum, et *also* tentum, tutudi *to beat or pound* tunsum, atque *and* dedi *to give*, quod *which* jure *by right* poscit *requires* datum, sic *so* quot *as many as* nascuntur *are derived* ab illo *from it*, ut *as* addidi *to add* habet *has* additum, atque *and* momordi *to bite* vult *will have* morsum.

(v. 165—170.)

Gi, fit *is made* ctum; ut *as* legi *to read* lectum; pegi *to fasten* que *and* pepigi *to covenant* dant *make* pactum, fregi *to break* fractum, quoque *also* tetigi *to touch* tactum, egi *to act* actum, pupugi *to prick* punctum; fugi *to flee* dat *makes* fugitum. (v. 171—173.)

Li, fit *becomes* sum; ut *as* pepuli *to drive away* pulsum; sic *so* rite *regularly* fefelli *to deceive* falsum, perculi *to strike* habet *has* perculsum, neve *and let not* tuli *to bear* aufugiat *te*

escape you, cui in the case of which word latum, semper always venit has come in usum into use. (v. 174—176.)

Mi, ni, pi, qui, sumunt *take* tum, velut *as* manifestum *is* manifest hic *here*: emi *to buy* emptum, veni *to come* ventum, cecini, à *from* cano *to sing* cantum, cepi, à *from* capio *to take* captum, quoque *also* cœpi *to begin* cœptum, rupi, à *from* rumpo *to break* ruptum; quoque *also* liqui *to leave* lictum. (v. 177—180.)

Ri, fit *is made* sum; ut *as* verri *to brush* versum; excipe *except* peperi *to bring forth* young partum. (v. 181.)

Si, fit *is made* sum; ut *as* visi *to go to see* visum; quin *moreover* misi *to send* formabit *will form* missum, ss geminato *s being doubled*; excipe *except* fulsi *to prop* fultum, hausi *to draw* haustum, sarsi *to patch* sartum, quoque *also* farsi *to stuff* fartum, ussi *to burn* ustum, gessi *to bear* gestum; torsi *to wreath* vindicat *sibi claims for itself* tortum, sic so indulsi *to indulge* format *tibi forms as you see* indultum. (v. 182—186.)

Psi, fit *is made* ptum; ut *as* scripsi *to write* scriptum, quoque *also* sculpsi *to engrave* sculptum. (v. 187.)

Ti, vult formare *will form* sum; ut *as* verti *to turn* versum; cùm *when* -stiti *habet has* supinum *a supine* erit *it will be* -statum, sed *but* vix valebis *you will scarcely be able* reperire *to find it*. (v. 188, 189.)

Vi, fit *is made* tum; ut *as* flavi *to blow* flatum: excipe *except* pavi *to feed cattle* pastum; lavi *to wash* dat *makes* lotum, interdum *sometimes* lautum, atque *and* lavatum; potavi *to drink* facit *makes* potum, venivi *a from* veneo *to be sold* venum; favi *to favour* dat *makes* fautum, cavi *to beware* cautum; à *from* sero sevi *to sow* ritè *formes you may rightly form* satum; disce *learn*, sepelivi *to bury* sepultum, et *and* singultivi *to sob* semper *habebit will always have* singultum; solvi, à *from* solvo *to loose* solutum, volvi, à *from* volvo *to roll* volutum. (v. 190—196.)

Quod *a verb that* dat *makes* ui, dat *makes* itum; ut *as* domui *to tame* domitum: excipe *except* quodvis *verbum every verb* in uo, quia *because* semper *formabit it will always form* ui in utum *ui in utum*; ut *as* exui *to put off* exutum: deme *except* rui, à *from* ruo *to rush*, dans *making* ruitum; secui *to*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

only, cognitum *to know* et *and* agnitum *to know again*, habentur *are found*; cætera *the rest* dant *make* notum: noscitur, jam *now* est *is* nullo in usu *not in use*. (v. 220, 221.)

X. VERBA in or *verbs ending in or* admittunt *take* præteritum *their perfect tense* ex posteriore supino *from the latter supine*, u verso u *being turned* per us *into us*, et *and* sum, vel or fui, consociato *being added*; ut *as* à *of* lectu *to be read* lectus sum, vel or fui, *I have been read*: at *but* horum *of these verbs* nunc *sometimes* est *there is* deponens *a deponent*, nunc *sometimes* est *there is* commune *a common* notandum *to be noted*. (v. 222—225.)

Nam *for* labor *to slide* dat *makes* lapsus; patior *to suffer* passus, et *and* ejus *natum* *its compound* perpetior *to endure*, formans *forming* perpessus; fateor *and* to own dat *makes* fassus, confiteor *to confess* confessus, gradior *and* to step dat *makes* gressus, metior *to measure* dat *gives* mensus sum, et *and* utor *to use* usus. (v. 226—229.)

Ordior, pro *for* texo *to weave* dat *makes* orditus, pro *for* incepto *to begin* orsus, nitor *to strive* nisus, vel or nixus sum, et *and* ulciscor *to revenge* ultus, simul *also* irascor *to be angry* iratus, atque *and* reor *to suppose* ratus sum, obliviscor *to forget* vult *will have* oblitus sum, fruor *to enjoy* optat *chooseth* fructus, vel or fruitus; junge *add* misereri *to have pity* miseratus, atque *and* miseritus; a *from* tuor *to see* et *and* tueor *to defend* tutus, que *and* tuitus; adde *add* locutus, à *of* loquor *to speak*, et *and* adde *add* secutus, à *of* sequor *to follow*. (v. 230—236.)

Experior *to try* facit *maketh* expertus; paciscor *to make a bargain* gaudet *will* formare *form* pactus sum, nanciscor *to get* nactus, apiscor *to obtain*, (quod *which* est *is* vetus verbum *an old verb*) aptus sum, undè *from whence* adipiscor *to get* adeptus. (v. 237—239.)

Junge *add* queror *to complain* questus, junge *add* proficiscor *to go* profectus, expergiscor *to awake* experrectus sum; et *and* quoque *also* hæc *these*, comminiscor *to devise* commentus, nascor *to be born* natus, morior *and* to die mortuus, atque *and* orior *to rise*, quod *which* facit *makes* præteritum *its perfect tense* ortus. (v. 240—243.)

Medeor *to remedy*, vescor *to feed upon*, liquor *and* to

melt carebunt will want perfecto the perfect tense ; sic quoque so also diffiteor to disown, sic so ringor to grin, sic so reminiscor to remember. (v. 244, 245.)

XI. HÆC *these verbs habent have præteritum a perfect tense activæ of the active et and passivæ vocis of the passive voice.* (v. 246)

Nubo *to be married* nupsi, que *and* nupta sum, placeo *to please* dat *gives* placui et *and* placitus, et *and* libet *it pleaseth* libuit libitum, et *and* adde *add* licet *it is lawful*, quod *which* makes licuit licitum ; tædet *it wearieeth*, quod *which* dat *makes* tæduit, et *and* pertæsum ; adde *add* pudet *it shameth* faciens *making* puduit, que *and* puditum, atque *and* piget *it grieveth*, quod *which* tibi *formats* forms you piguit, que *and* pigitum. (v. 247—251.)

XII. HÆC *these verbs rarò seldom aut or nunquam never retinebunt will have supinum their supine* : lambo *to lick*, mico micui *to glitter*, rudo *to bray as an ass*, scabo *to claw*, parco peperci *to spare*, dispesco *to drive from pasture*, posco *to require*, compesco *to restrain*, atque *and* adjice *add* disco *to learn*, dego *to live*, ango *to throttle*, sugo *to suck*, lingo *to lick*, ningo *to snow*, que *and* satago *to be busy*, psallo *to play on an instrument*, volo *to be willing*, nolo *to be unwilling*, malo *to be more willing*, tremo *to tremble*, strideo *to scream*, flaveo *to be yellow*, liveo *to be black and blue*, avet *to covet*, paveo *to dread*, conniveo *to wink*, fervet *to be hot*. Compositum *a compound à of* nuo *to nod* ; ut *as*, renuo *to refuse* : à *of* cado *to fall* ; ut *as*, accido *to happen* ; præter *except* occido *to fall down*, quod *which* facit *makes* occasum, que *and* recido *to fall back* recasum : respuo *to refuse*, sic *so* metuo *to fear*, cluo *to shine or to be famous* frigeo *to be cold*, calveo *to be bald*, sterto *to snore*, sic *etiam so also* timeo *to fear* ; sic *so* luceo *to shine*, et *and* arceo *t drive away*, cujus *composita whose compounds habent have* -ercitum ; sic *so* nata *the compounds à of* gruo *to cry like crane*, ut *as* ingruo *to invade* ; et *and* quæcunque *neutra whatever neuters secundæ of the second conjugation formantur are formed in* ui ; excipias *you may except* oleo *to smell*, dolo

to be in pain, placeo to please, que and taceo to hold one's peace, pareo to obey, item also careo to want, noceo to hurt, jaceo to lie down, que and lateo to lie hid, et also valeo to be in health, caleo to be hot; namque for hæc these verbs gaudent supino have their supines. (v. 252—266.)



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

6. *Cùm* when *nomen a noun* singularis numeri of the singular number *indicat denotes* multitudinem a multitude, sæpe jungitur it is often joined verbo plurali to a plural verb: ut as, *Turba the crowd tenent occupy* atria *the halls,* leve vulgus *the fickle mob veniunt come* euntque *and go.* Uterque eorum *each of them educunt draw out* exercitum *thè:r army* ex castris *from the camp.*

(a.) *Sic so* et also *adverbium the adverb* partim *partly* aliquando *sometimes* usurpatur *is used* cum *with* genitivo plurali *nominis the genitive plural of the noun,* ceu as *nomen ipsum the noun itself:* ut as, *Partim eorum part of them sunt are* timidi *cowardly,* partim *part* aversi *disaffected* a republicâ *to the republic.* Partim eorum *part of these things* ficta *sunt aperte were openly* inventa, partim *part* effutita *uttered* temere *at random.*

7. *Verbum a verb* positum *placed* inter *between* duos *nominales two nominative cases* ejusdem personæ *of the same person* sed *but* diversorum *numerorum of different numbers* potest concordare *may agree* cum *with* alterutro *either,* sed *but* fere *usually* concordat *does agree* cum *with* posteriore *with the latter:* ut as, *Iræ the quarrels* amantium *of lovers* integratio *est are the renewing* amoris *of love.* Pectus quoque *her breast also fiunt* robora *becomes* oak. *Omnia everything* pontus *erant was* sea.

8. Pro *nominativo instead of a nominative case* accusativus *an accusative* sequitur *follows* verba *verbs* dicendi *of saying,* audiendi *of hearing,* sciendi *of knowing,* putandi *of thinking,* et similia *and the like,* et *verbum sum and the verb sum,* verbo infinitivo *a verb in the infinitive mood* sequente *following:* ut as, *Audivit he heard* nos *that we* venire *were coming.* *Scribit he writes* word bellum *that the war* confectum *esse is* finished. *Fama est a report exists* Enceladum *that Enceladus* urgeri *is overwhelmed* mole *hâc by this* mass.

(a.) *Infinitivus modus the infinitive mood* futuri temporis *of the future tense* plerumque *generally* sequitur *follows* verba *verbs* sperandi *of hoping* et *and* promittendi *of promising:* ut as, *Promitto I promise* me *that I* observaturum *esse will* observe *hæc these* things. *Spero I hope* fore *ut contingat* id *that that will happen* nobis *to us.*

9. ADJECTIVA *adjectives,* participia *participles,* et *and* pronomina *pronouns,* concordant *agree* cum *with* substantivo

the substantive genere in gender, numero in number, et and casu in case : ut as, Rara avis an uncommon bird in terris in the world, simillimaque and very much like nigro cygno a black swan.

10. *Cùm when verbum a verb infinitivi modi of the infinitive mood, aut or pars sententiæ part of a sentence usurpatur is used pro substantivo instead of a substantive, habetur it is considered neutrius generis of the neuter gender : ut as, Irasci to be angry est is humanum a human error.*

11. *Cùm when plura sunt substantiva there are many substantives diversorum generum of different genders, adjectivum the adjective concordat agrees cum with digniore genere the more worthy gender, si if agitur one is speaking de animantibus of living objects, et and si if ponitur it is put in numero plurali in the plural number : ut as, Pater mihi my father et mater and mother mortui sunt have been dead jampridem long since.*

12. *Si vero but if agitur de rebus things are spoken of, adjectivum the adjective sæpe ponitur is often put in neutro in the neuter gender : ut as, Secundæ res prosperity, honores honours, imperia commands, victoriæ victories, fortuita sunt depend on chance.*

(a.) *Interdum sometimes adjectivum the adjective concordat agrees cum proximo substantivo with the nearest substantive cujuscunque generis sit of whatever gender it is, præsertim especially cùm when ponitur it is put in singulari numero in the singular number : ut as, Animus the intention, et and consilium the purpose, et and sententia the opinion civitatis of the state posita est have been expressed in legibus in the laws.*

13. *Aliquando sometimes adjectivum the adjective concordat agrees cum substantivo with a substantive quod which significatur is implied, non cum eo not with that quod which exprimitur is expressed : ut as, Auxilia Thracum the auxiliary force of the Thracians, cùm as pars part adjacerent lay close munitionibus to the fortifications, cæsi sunt were slain.*

14. *Aliquando sometimes nullum substantivum no substantive exprimitur is expressed, sed but adjectivum the adjective usurpatur is used pro substantivo for a substantive : ut as, Loquor I am saying mira strange things. Multi many men libenter willingly oppetierunt mortem have sought death pro patriâ for their country.*

15. RELATIVUM *the relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* antecedente *the antecedent* genere *in gender*, numero *in number*, et *and* personâ *in person* : ut *as*, Ego sum *I am* ille consul *that consul* qui *who* servavi *saved* Romam *Rome*. Contemnimus *we despise* hominem *a man* qui *who* amat *loves* mendacia *lies*.

16. Quoniam *since* relativum *the relative* adjectivum *est is an adjective*, sequitur *it follows* easdem leges *the same laws* de genere *as to gender* quas *as* adjectivum *an adjective* : ut *as*, Eæ fruges *these crops* atque fructus *and fruits* quos *which* terra *the earth* gignit *produces*. Duo importuna prodigia *the two prodigies of wickedness* quos *whom* improbitas *their profligacy* addixerat *had bound* tribuno plebis *to the tribune of the people*. Ubi *est where is* illud scelus *that wicked man* qui *who* perdidit me *has undone me*?

17. Aliquando *sometimes* sententia *a sentence* aut *or* pars sententiæ *part of a sentence* ponitur *is put* pro *for* antecedente *an antecedent* : ut *as*, Veni *I came* ad eam *to her* in tempore *in season*, quod *which* est *is* rerum omnium primum *the main business of all*.

18. Relativum *a relative* collocatum *placed* inter *between* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversorum generum *of different genders* et *and* numerorum *numbers* concordat *agrees* sæpe *often* cum *with* posteriore *the latter* substantiva : ut *as*, Homines *men* tuentur *regard* illum globum *that globe* quæ *which* dicitur *is called* terra *the earth*.

(a.) Relativum *a relative* sæpe ponitur *is often put* Latinè *in Latin* ubi *where* in nostro sermone *in our language* utimur *we use* pronomine *a pronoun* cum conjunctione *with a conjunction* : ut *as*, Si *if*, pater *O father*, scisses *you had known* hoc *this*, cujus pietatis es *such is your piety*, nemo *no one* antecessisset te *would have outdone you*. Et tamen *and yet*, quæ jam patientia nostra est *so great is our patience*, spernimur *we are despised* in cælo *in heaven*. Pater tuus si viveret *if your father were alive*, quâ severitate fuit *such was his severity*, tu profecto *you in truth* non viveres *would not be alive*. Jussit hoc *he ordered this*, quod si fecissem *but if I had done it* perdidissem *I should have ruined* omnia *every thing*.

19. Aliquando *sometimes* relativum *a relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* primitivo *the primitive*, quod *which* subauditur *is understood* in possessivo *in the possessive* : ut *as*, Hoc *this* maxime interest vestrâ *is of the greatest consequence to you*, qui *who* vixistis *have lived* cum summâ integritate *with*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ut *as*, Ventum erat *we had come* ad Vestæ *to the temple of Vesta*. Hasdrubal *Hasdrubal* Gisgonis *the son of Gisgo*.

25. Substantivum *a substantive* denotans *denoting* qualitatem *quality*, adjuncto *adjective* *if an adjective be added*, ponitur *is put* in genitivo *in the genitive* vel *or* in ablativo *in the ablative*: ut *as*, Titus Titus fuit *was* tantæ facilitatis *of such great kindness*, ut *that* negaret quicquam nemini *he never denied anything to any one*. Agesilaus *Agesilaus* fuit *was* staturâ humili *of low stature* et corpore exiguo *and of a slight body*.

(*a.*) Substantiva *substantives* derivata a verbis *derived from verbs* interdum *sometimes* admittunt *admit* eosdem casus *the same cases* post se *after them* quos *as* verba *the verbs* exigunt *require* a quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived*: ut *as*, Spe *all hope* reditionis *of a return* domum *home* sublatâ *being taken away*. Justitia *justice* est *is* obtemperatio *obedience* scriptis legibus *to written laws*.

26. Opus *need* et *and* usus *need* exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case* rei *of the thing*, cum dativo *with a dative* personæ *of the person*: ut *as*, Opus est nobis *we have need* auctoritate tuâ *of your authority*. Non accepit *he would not receive* pecuniam *money* ab iis *from them*, quâ *of which* sibi esset *he had* nihil usus *no need*.

(*a.*) Autem *but* opus, videtur *seems* quandoque *sometimes* poni *to be put* adjectivè *adjectively* pro *for* necessarius *necessary*: ut *as*, Dux *a leader* et *and* auctor *an adviser* est *is* opus *necessary* nobis *for us*.

27. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* vel *or* participia *participles* posita *put* pro adjectivis *for adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* cupidinem *desire*, scientiam *knowledge*, memoriam *memory*, timorem *fear*, diligentiam *diligence*, participationem *articipation*, atque *and* contraria *the contraries* iis *to these*, um plurimis aliis *with many others* quæ *which* denotant *denote* ualitatem *a quality* vel motum aliquem *or some passion* animi *of the mind*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Pythagoras *Pythagoras* appellavit *called* studiosos *those who were fond* sapientiæ *of wisdom* philosophos *philosophers*. Mens *a mind* conscia recti *conscious of rectitude* ridet *laughs* at mendacia *the lies* famæ *of rumour*. Estote *be ye* jam nunc *even now* memores *mindful* venturæ senectæ *of coming old age*. Mens hominum *the mind of man* nescia *ignorant* fati *of fate*

sortisque futuræ *and his future lot*. Romani *the Romans* fuerunt *were* appetentes *eager after* gloriæ *glory* præter *beyond* cæteras gentes *all other nations*. Serpit *he creeps* humi *on the ground* tutus nimium *too cautious* timidusque *and afraid* procellæ *of a storm*. Vir *a man* diligentissimus *most diligent* in omnis officii *every duty*. Cæteræ *the others* possunt *can* habere *have* domi *at home* participem *one who shares* omnium fortunarum *all their fortunes*. Sæpe *often* anus *an old woman* potens voti *having gained her wish* redit *returns*.

(a.) Ex his *of these* particeps *sharing in* interdum *sometimes* jungitur *is joined* dativo *to a dative case* personæ *of the person*: ut *as*, Mater *the mother* particeps marito *sharing with her husband* in plerisque operibus *in most of the toils* ruris *of the country*.

(b.) Conscius *conscious* postulat *requires* genitivum *a genitive case* rei *of the thing*, dativum *a dative* personæ *of the person*; interdum *sometimes* etiam *even* jungitur *it is joined* dativo *to a dative* rei *of the thing*, personâ *the person* subauditâ *being understood*: ut *as*, Conscius sibi *conscious to himself* tanti sceleris *of such wickedness*. Mens tua *your mind* non debuit esse *ought not to have been* conscia *an accomplice in* huic facinori tanto *this enormous wickedness*.

28. Adjectiva *adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* copiam *plenty* egestatemve *or want* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*, interdum *sometimes* etiam *also* ablativum *an ablative*: ut *as*, Dives *rich* eqûum *in horses*, dives *rich* pictâ vestis *in embroidered garments*, et *and* auri *gold*. Dives *rich* agris *in lands*, dives *rich* nummis *in money* positus *in* fœnore *laid out at usury*. Non indiga *not in need of* opis nostræ *our aid*. Omnia *everything* plena sunt *is full* errorum *of blunders*. Animus humanus *the human mind* est *is* expers *free* from utriusque *each* harum *of these things*.

29. Adjectiva *adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* liberalitatem *liberality*, vel *or* contrarium *the contrary*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Liberalis *liberal* pecuniæ *of his money*. Non parcus *not sparing* veteris aceti *of his old vinegar*.

30. Proprius *peculiar to*, superstes *surviving*, communis *common*, cum *with* paucis aliis *a few others*, admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case*, interdum *sometimes* etiam *also* dativum *a dative*: ut *as*, Libertas *liberty* est *is* propria *peculiar to* populi Romani *the Roman people*. Sumus *superstites* we

have survived aliorum *the others.* Hoc *this* commune est *is common* cupidorum potentiae *to those desirous of power* cum otiosis *with the indolent.* Mors *death* est communis *is common* omni ætati *to every age.* Pomponius *Pomponius* superstes *survived* Tiberio *Tiberius.*

(a.) Communis vero *but communis* nunquam jungitur *is never joined* pronomini personali *to a personal pronoun*, nisi *except* dativo *in the dative*: ut *as*, Hoc *this* commune est *is common* mihi *to me* tecum *and you.*

31. Alienus *foreign* to jungitur *is joined* genitivo *to a genitive case*, vel *or* dativo *to a dative*, vel *or* ablativo *to an ablative*, vel *or* ablativo *to an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition*: ut *as*, Censet *he thinks* hoc *this* alienum esse *to be inconsistent with* suæ dignitatis *his dignity.* Alienus *averse* ambitioni *to ambition.* Fraus *deceit* alienissima est *is very foreign* to homine *the nature of man.* Non alienus *not averse* a studiis *to the studies* Scævola *of Scævola.*

32. Adjectiva *adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* crimen *crime* vel *or* contrarium *the contrary* junguntur *are joined* genitivo *to a genitive case*: ut *as*, Regulus *Regulus* trahebat *brought* ad disquisitionem *to examination* collegam *his colleague*, ut *as* noxium *guilty* conjurationis *of the conspiracy.* Integer *innocent* vitæ *in life*, purusque *and free from* sceleris *wickedness.*

33. Adjectiva *adjectives* verbalia *derived from verbs* in *ax* ending in *ax* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Tempus *time* edax *is the consumer* rerum *of all things.*

34. Adjectiva *adjectives* partitiva *partitive adjectives*, numeralia *adjectives of number*, comparativa *comparatives* et *and* superlativa *superlatives*, et *also* adjectiva *adjectives* posita *put* partitivè *partitively*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Accipe *take* utrum horum *which of these two* mavis *you had rather.* Romulus, *fuit* was primus *the first* Romanorum regum *of the Roman kings.* Dextra *the right* est *is* fortior *the stronger* manuum *of the hands*, Medius *the middle* est *is* longissimus *the longest* digitorum *of the fingers.* Sancte deorum *O sacred deity!* sequimur *we follow* te *you.*

(a.) Usurpantur *they are used* et *also* cum his præpositionibus *with these prepositions*, de *of*, ex *of*, in *among*, inter *among*: ut *as*, Nam *for* alter *one* e vobis *of you* es Deus *is a God*, alter *the other* eris *will be.* Thales *Thales* fuit *was* sapientissimus *the wisest* in septem *of the seven.* Solus *the only one* de superis *of the gods* qui *who* vides *see* tua terga



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

39. ADJECTIVA *adjectives significantia signifying magnitude exigunt require accusativum an accusative case* : ut *as*, Fossa a ditch undecim pedes lata eleven feet wide.

40.¹ Natus *born cùm when refertur it refers ad durationem temporis to the duration of time exigit requires accusativum an accusative case* : ut *as*, Undeviginti annos natus nineteen years old.

41. Accusativus *an accusative case sæpe often a poetis subjicitur is put by poets after adjectivis adjectives et and participiis participles passivæ vocis of the passive voice, præsertim especially cùm when pars affecta the part affected indicatur is indicated* : ut *as*, Similis Deo like a God os *as to his face humerosque and shoulders. Flores flowers inscripti inscribed with nomina the names regum of kings. Stratus prostrate membra as to one's limbs nunc at one time viridi sub arbuto under a green arbutus.*

42. Accusativus *an accusative case sæpe often usurpatur is used in exclamationibus in exclamations, interjectione aliquâ some interjection subauditâ being understood a quâ by which reverà regitur it is in reality governed* : ut *as*, Me cæcum blind that I am qui non viderim not to have seen hæc this ante before.

43. ADJECTIVA *adjectives regunt govern ablativum an ablative case significantem signifying causam the cause, aut or formam the form, vel or modum the manner rei of a thing* : ut *as*, Par est he is equal illi to him scelere in wickedness, inferior inferior industriâ in energy. Cæsar, Trojanus a Trojan origine by descent.

44. Dignus *worthy, indignus unworthy, præditus endued, contentus content, extorris banished, fretus relying upon, cum with adjectivis adjectives significantibus signifying pretium price, exigunt require ablativum an ablative case* : ut *as*, Es you are dignus worthy odio of hatred. Mens the mind prædita est is endued motu sempiterno with perpetual motion. Abi go your way contentus contented sorte tuâ with your lot. Extorris banished from agro Romano the Roman territory. Otium ease venale to be purchased gemmis with jewels nec nor auro with gold. Quod non opus est what is not necessary carum est is dear asse at a penny.

(a.) Nonnulla some horum of these admittunt admit interdum sometimes poeticè in poetry genitivum a genitive case :

ut as, *Indignus unworthy magnorum avorum of my great ancestors.*

(b.) *Fretus relying upon interdum sometimes, sed but raro seldom, jungitur is joined dativo to a dative case: ut as, Multitudo hostium the multitude of the enemy freta fuit relied nulli rei on nothing præter quam numero except their numbers.*

45. *Natus, satus, cretus, born of, et and similia words of similar meaning exigunt require ablativum an ablative case sine præpositione without a preposition; ortus, editus, born of, require an ablative case, vel either cum with vel or sine præpositione without a preposition: ut as, Nate o you born Deâ of a goddess. Sate o man sprung from sanguine the blood Divûm of the Gods. Hortamur we encourage him fari to tell quo sanguine of what race cretus he is sprung. Generate o son Anchisâ of Anchises, certissima proles most undoubted offspring Deûm of the Gods. Venus Venus orta mari born of the sea præstat mare makes the sea safe eunti for the voyager. Nympha I a nymph edita born de magno flumine of a mighty river contenta fui was content te with you marito for my husband.*

46. *Ablativus rei an ablative case of the thing ad quam to which comparatio comparison fiat is made subjicitur is put after comparativis adjectives in the comparative degree, vel or else utraque res comparata each of the things which are compared together ponitur is put in eodem casu in the same case, conjunctione quàm the conjunction quàm than interpositâ being inserted: ut as, Argentum silver est is vilius of less value auro than gold, aurum gold virtutibus than virtue. Certa pax certain peace melior est is better tutiorque and safer quàm than sperata victoria a victory hoped for.*

(a.) *Cùm when duo adjectiva two adjectives vel or adverbia adverbs comparantur inter se are compared together, et and conjunguntur are connected per quàm by quàm, ambo both fere ponuntur are usually put in comparativo in the comparative degree: ut as, Concio the speech Publii Æmilii of Publius Æmilius fuit verior quàm gratior was true rather than pleasing populo to the people. Non timeo I am not afraid ne lest videar I should seem evomere hæc to pour forth these things in illum against him libentius quàm verius with more eagerness than truth.*

(b.) *Post after minus less, plus, amplius, more, et and longius farther, quàm than interdum sometimes omittitur is*

omitted, nihilominus nevertheless substantivum the substantive quod sequitur which follows non ponitur is not put in ablativo in the ablative case : ut as, Si *if* vos *ye* hodie *to-day* feceritis *make* minus *less* decem plebis tribunos *than ten tribunes of the people*. Cùm *when* æger fuisset *he had been sick* plus annum *more than a year*. Dixit *he said* copias *that the troops Gallorum of the Gauls* abfuisse *were absent* ab hybernis suis *from his winter quarters* non longius *not further* millia passuum octo *than eight miles*.

(c.) Aliquando sometimes quàm pro, cum substantivo with a substantive, quàm qui, vel or quàm ut, cum verbo with a verb, subjiciuntur are put after comparativis adjectives in the comparative degree : ut as, Prælium a battle editur takes place atrocius more violent quàm pro numero than one would expect from the number pugnantium of the combatants. Major sum I am too great quàm cui fortuna possit nocere for fortune to be able to injure me. Flumen the river latius erat was too wide quàm ut tranare possent for them to be able to swim across.

47. MEI of me, tui of thee or you, sui of himself, nostri of us, vestri of you, genitivi the genitive cases primitivorum of their primitives, ponuntur are used cùm when persona a person significatur is signified : ut as, Languet she languishes desiderio tui for want of you. Parsque and part tui of you lateat may lie clausa shut up corpore meo in my body. Imago nostri the picture of our person.

48. Meus mine, tuus thine, suus his own, noster ours, vester yours, ponuntur are used cùm when actio action vel or possessio the possession rei of a thing significatur is signified : ut as, Favet he favours desiderio tuo your desire. Imago nostra our picture, (id est that is, quam which nos we possidemus do possess.)

49. Pronomina possessiva possessive pronouns interdum sometimes recipiunt take post se after them hos genitivos these genitive cases, ipsius of himself, solius of him alone, unius of one, omnium of all, plurium of more, paucorum of few, cujusque of every one ; et and also genitivos the genitive cases participiorum of participles qui which referuntur are referred ad primitivum to a primitive subauditum understood : ut as, Dixi I affirmed rempublicam that the state esse salvam was preserved mcâ unius operâ by my single service. Meum



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ferunt *they devote their attention* in res obscuras *to obscure matters*, easdemque *and these too* non necessarias *not necessary*.

54. VERBA substantiva *verbs substantive*, ut *as*, sum *I am*, fio *I am made*, existo *I am*; verba passiva *verbs passive* vocandi *of calling*, ut *as*, nominor *I am named*, appellor *I am called*, dicor *I am said*, vocor *I am called*, et *and* similia *the like* iis *to them*, ut *as*, videor *I am seen*, habeor *I am accounted*, existimor *I am thought*, habent *have* eosdem casus *the same cases* utrinque *on both sides*: ut *as*, Deus *God* est *is* Creator *the Maker* mundi *of the world*. Natura *nature* dedit *hath granted* omnibus *to all* esse *to be* beatis *happy*. Ex nitido *from a smart man* fit *he becomes* rusticus *a clown*. Dicorque *and I am called* opifer *helper* per orbem *all over the world*. Da *grant* mihi *to me* fallere *to deceive*, da *grant* to me videri *to seem* justo *just* sanctoque *and holy*.

(a.) Item *likewise* omnia verba *all verbs* ferè *in a manner* admittunt *admit* post se *after them* adjectivum *an adjective*, quod *which* concordat *agrees* cum *with* nominativo verbi *the nominative case of the verb* casu *in case*, genere *gender*, et *and* numero *number*: ut *as*, Pii *pious men* orant *pray* taciti *silently*. Malus pastor *a bad shepherd* dormit *sleeps* supinus *with his face upwards*.

55. SUM *I am* et *and* fio *I become* postulant *require* genitivum *a genitive case* quoties *as often as* significant *they signify* possessionem *possession*, officium *duty*, signum *sign*, aut *or* id *that* quod *which* pertinet *has respect* ad rem quampiam *to anything*: ut *as*, Est *it is* the duty adolescentis *of a young man* revereri *to reverence* majores natu *his elders*. Thebæ *Thebes* factæ sunt *became* populi Romani *the property of the Roman people* jure belli *by the right of war*.

56. Verba *verbs* accusandi *of accusing*, damnandi *of condemning*, absolvendi *of acquitting*, et *and* similia *the like*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case* criminis *of the accusation* vel *or* pœnæ *of the punishment*, accusativum *an accusative* personæ *of the person*: ut *as*, Accusat *he accuses* alterum *the other* ambitûs *of bribery*. In simulabant *they accused* eum *him* proditionis *of treason*. Damnatus est *he was condemned* octupli *in eight-fold* damages.

57. Hic genitivus *this genitive case* vertitur *is changed* aliquando *sometimes* in ablativum *into an ablative*, interdum

sometimes (*cùm when de crimine agitur the accusation is spoken of*) *cum with præpositione de the preposition de* : ut as, *Si if es you are iniquus judex a partial judge in me to me. ego I condemnabo will condemn te you eodem crimine of the same crime. Non damnarer I should not be condemned capite to death ob eam rem for that matter. Restituit he restored Licinium Licinius condemnatum who had been condemned de aleâ for gambling.*

(a.) *Uterque both, nullus none, alter the other, neuter neither of the two, alius another, ambo both, et and adjectiva superlativa adjectives of the superlative degree, junguntur are joined verbis to verbs hujusmodi of that kind non nisi only in ablativo in the ablative case* : ut as, *Accusas do you accuse him furti of theft an or stupri indecency? Utrouque of both. Accusaris you are accused de plurimis of very many things simul at once.*

58. *Verba verbs miserendi of pitying postulant require genitivum a genitive case, præter except miseror to pity, qui which jungitur is joined soli accusativo to an accusative case only* : ut as, *Oro I pray you miserere pity laborum tantorum such great distresses, miserere pity animi a soul ferentis suffering non digna things undeserved. O sola miserata O you who alone have pitied infandos labores the unspeakable calamities Trojæ of Troy.*

59. *Verba verbs reminiscendi of remembering et and obliviscendi of forgetting admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case, vel or accusativum an accusative* : ut as, *Est it is proprium the property stultitiæ of folly cernere to discern aliorum vitia other men's faults, oblivisci to forget suorum its own. Nec memini nor do I remember veterum malorum the old misfortunes lætorve nor am I glad of them. Recordabitur he will recollect flagitiorum suorum his crimes. Tu you, Caius Cæsar O Caius Cæsar, soles are wont oblivisci to forget nihil nothing nisi except injurias injuries. Juvabit it will be a pleasure olim hereafter meminisse to call to mind hæc these things. Si if recordor I recollect ritè well audita the things I heard.*

60. *Verba verbs admonendi of admonishing exigunt require genitivum rei a genitive of the thing, accusativum personæ an accusative of the person; interdum sometimes ablativum rei an ablative of the thing cum with præpositione de the preposition de, interdum sometimes geminum accusativum a double accusative* : ut as, *Catilina Catiline admonebat reminded alium*

one egestatis of his need, alium another cupiditatis suæ of his covetousness. Putavi I thought te that you admonendum esse ought to be admonished eâ de re of that matter. Unoquoque gradu at every step commonemur we are reminded de avaritiâ tuâ of your avarice. Præclarè admones you do well to admonish me me illud of that.

61. Potior to gain or enjoy jungitur is joined aut either genitivo to a genitive case, aut or ablativo to an ablative: ut as, Romani the Romans potiti sunt gained signorum the standards et and armorum the arms. Troës the Trojans egressi being landed potiuntur enjoy optatâ arenâ the wished-for shore.

62. OMNIA verba all verbs fere commonly regunt govern dativum a dative case ejus rei of that thing cujus causâ for the sake of which aliquid anything fit is done, aut or in quam to which actio the action refertur is referred: ut as, Sic so nulum tempus no time abibit vobis will pass by to you iners unproductive. Magna injuria a great injury facta est was done Laomedonti to Laomedon. Pisistratus Pisistratus vicit conquered Megarenses the Megarians sibi for himself non not patriæ for his country. Hoc this patet is evident omnibus to all. Quid what majus greater thing nutricula can a nurse voveat pray for dulci alumno for her dear boy? Appius Appius blanditur mihi caresses me. Civitas Romana the Roman state olim formerly parum vacabat had but little leisure liberalibus studiis for liberal studies. Namque for est mihi there is to me domi at home pater a father, est there is injusta noverca an unjust step-mother. Consulte consult vobis for yourselves, prospicite provide patriæ for your country. Medici physicians timent dread noxam the injurious qualities vini of wine ægris for invalids.

(a.) Sed but delecto to delight, juvo to help, lædo to hurt, exigunt require accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Arbusta trees non juvant do not please omnes every one.

63. Verba verbs comparandi of comparing regunt govern dativum a dative case, interdum etiam sometimes also accusativum an accusative vel or ablativum an ablative cum præpositionibus with the prepositions inter vel or cum: ut as, Sic thus solebam was I used componere to compare magna great things parvis to small. Comparete compare hominem cum homine man with man, rem cum re circumstance with circumstance. Comparemus let us compare partes the parts honestatis of honesty inter se with one another.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

case; *tempero to rule, et and moderor to rule, quæ which admittunt admit vel either dativum a dative case, vel or accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Jubebo I will command fortem animum my brave mind tolerare to endure hoc this. Ille he regit animos restrains their fierceness dictis with his words. Hortor te I exhort you ut gubernes to manage omnia everything tuâ prudentiâ according to your own wisdom. Sit censor let there be a censor qui doceat who may teach viros husbands moderari uxoris to manage their wives. Decet it is right moderari consilia to direct one's counsels non not voluptate according to pleasure sed but officio duty. Æolus Æolus temperat restrains iras the violence ventorum of the winds. Vix temperavere they scarcely restrained animis their courage.*

67. Verba verbs irascendi of being angry regunt govern dativum a dative case: Verba verbs condonandi of pardoning dativum a dative personæ of the person, accusativum an accusative culpæ of the fault, si if ambo both exprimuntur are expressed; si if alterum tantum one only be expressed, dativum a dative: Verba verbs minandi of threatening dativum govern a dative personæ of the person, accusativum an accusative rei of the thing: ut as, Nihil est there is no reason quod succenseam why I should be angry adolescenti with the young man. Homines men ignoscunt sibi omnia forgive themselves for everything. Minitatus est he threatened utrique each of them mortem with death.

68. Verba verbs fidendi of trusting et and contraria the contrary iis to them exigunt require dativum a dative case: ut as, Decet it is fit committere to commit nil nothing nisi but lene what is soft vacuis venis to the empty veins. Diffidit he distrusts perpetuitati the continuance bonorum suorum of his good fortune.

(a.) Interdum vero but sometimes verba fidendi verbs of trusting junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative: ut as, Confidit he trusts in stabilitate the stability fortunæ of fortune.

69. Verba verbs composita compounded cum his adverbis with these adverbs, benè well, malè ill, satis enough; et and cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super, dis, re, fermè for the most part regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, Dii may the Gods benefaciant do good tibi to thee! Multitudo the multitude circumfundebatur surrounded on all sides con-

cionanti *him haranguing*. Judices *the judges* debuerant *ought* constare *to have been consistent* sibi *with themselves*, et *and* convenire *to have agreed* superioribus *judiciis* *with former decisions*. Campus *a plain* interjacens *lying between* Tiberi *the Tiber* et *and* mœnibus Romanis *the walls of Rome*. Obstiti *I opposed* omnibus ejus consiliis *all his plans*. Ausa est *she has dared* postponere *to postpone* vos *you* natis suis *to her own children*. Præfecit Brutum *he appointed Brutus* to command copiis *the troops*. Proponite ora ipsa *place his very countenance* before oculis *your eyes*. Magnitudine animi *by magnanimity* potest repugnari *one can resist* fortunæ *fortune*. Superfuit *he survived* patri *his father*.

(a.) Nonnulla tamen *but some* ex his *of these* interdum *sometimes* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative case* : ut *as*, Alius *one* præstat *exceeds* alium *another* ingenio *in ability*. Beatum est *it is a happy thing* post mortem *after death* convenire *to meet* eos *those* qui *who* vixerint *have lived* justè *justly* et *and* cum fide *honourably*.

70. Interdum *sometimes* dativus *a dative case* agentis *of the agent* subjicitur *is put* after passivis verbis *passive verbs* ; interdum *sometimes* ablativus *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition* : ut *as*, Hoc *this* non intelligitur *is not understood* viventi *by any one living* in laboribus *in labours*. Laudatur *he is praised* ab his *by the one*, culpatur *he is blamed* ab illis *by the others*.

71. Sum cum multis aliis *the verb sum with many others* admittit *admits* geminum dativum *a double dative case*, alterum *one personæ of the person or object*, alterum *the other rei of the thing or effect* : ut *as*, Mare *the sea* est *is* exitio *the destruction* avidis nautis *of greedy sailors*. Reliquit *he left* quinque cohortes *five cohorts* præsidio *as a protection* castris *to the camp*. Delegerunt *they chose* hunc locum *this place* domicilio *for a habitation* sibi *for themselves*.

72. VERBA transitiva *verbs transitive* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative case* : ut *as*, Cano *I sing* of arma *arms* virumque *and the man*. Non deprecor *I do not deprecate* mortem *death*, inquit *said he*.

73. Verba neutralia *verbs neuter* sæpe *often* habent *have* post se *after them* accusativum *an accusative case* cognatæ significationis *of a like signification* : ut *as*, Servit *he serves* duram servitutem *a hard servitude* Nec *nor* vox *does* your

voice sonat sound hominem like a human creature; O Dea O a Goddess, certè doubtless.

(a.) Verba neutralia neuter verbs aliquando etiam sometimes also regunt govern accusativum an accusative ejus rei of that thing quæ which significat signifies causam the cause: ut as, Id succenseo I am angry about that matter tibi with you.

74. Verba verbs rogandi of asking, docendi of teaching, celandi of concealing, cogendi of compelling, sæpe often regunt govern duplicem accusativum two accusative cases: ut as, Tu modò do but you posce ask veniam pardon Deos of the Gods. Consuefeci I have accustomed filium my son ne celet not to conceal ea these things me from me. Quid why, asine o ass, nunc te doceam literas should I now teach you letters? Quid to what non cogis do you not drive mortalia pectora mortal hearts, sacra fames o cursed desire auri for gold?

(a.) Sæpe etiam often also verba docendi verbs of teaching per ellipsin by ellipsis admittunt admit ablativum an ablative: ut as, Nobilissimus fidicen a very celebrated lyre-player docuit Socratem taught Socrates fidibus the lyre, (i.e. that is, ludere fidibus to play on the lyre.)

75. Quædam etiam verba some verbs also motûs of motion composita compounded cum præpositionibus with the prepositions ad, trans, circum, præter, regunt govern duplicem accusativum a double accusative case, quorum alter one of which refertur is referred ad præpositionem to the preposition: ut as, Trajecit copias he threw his troops across Iberum the Ebro. Idem he also adigit Afranium jusjurandum compels Afranius to take an oath.

76. Verba verbs quæ which activâ voce in the active voice regunt govern duplicem accusativum a double accusative case, et and verba verbs vestiendi of clothing, habent have post se after them accusativum an accusative case etiam also in passivâ voce in the passive voice: ut as, Posceris you are required to sacrifice exta the entrails bovis of a heifer. Belgæ the Belgians transducuntur are led across Rhenum the Rhine. Induiturque and he is clothed with aures the ears aselli of an ass lentè gradientis which proceeds slowly.

77. QUODVIS verbum every verb admittit admits ablativum an ablative case significantem signifying instrumentum the instrument, aut or causam the cause, aut or modum the manner actionis of an action: ut as, Hi these certant endeavour



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

(a.) Sæpe etiam *often also* verba egendi *verbs of wanting* et *and* implendi *of filling* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case* : ut *as*, Implentur *they are filled* veteris Bacchi *with old wine*, pinguisque ferinæ *and fat venison*. Indigent *they want* non tam *not so much* artis *skill* quàm *as* laboris *industry*.

81. Verba *verbs* abstinendi *of abstaining from* atque *and* arcendi *of driving away from* regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative case* : interdum *sometimes* cum *præpositione* *with a preposition*, quæ *quidem* *which indeed* semper *usurpatur* *is always used* ante *personam* *before a person* : ut *as*, Lucius Brutus *Lucius Brutus* liberavit *delivered* civitatem *the state* dominatu regio *from the dominion of the kings*. Gaudeo *I am glad* te *that you* liberatum *are recovered* à quartanâ *from your ague*. Apud veteres Romanos *among the ancient Romans* nefas *it was considered impiety* arcere *to repel* quemcunque mortalium *any mortal* tecto *from one's roof*. Tu Jupiter *do you, o Jupiter*, arcebis *repel* hunc *this man* a tuis aris *from your altars*, a tectis urbis *from the houses of the city*.

(a.) Apud poetas *among the poets* (ad usum Græcorum *in imitation of the Greek usage*) verba abstinendi *verbs of abstaining from* aliquando *sometimes* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case* : ut *as*, Abstineto *abstain*, dixit *said* she, irarum *from anger* calidæque rixæ *and hot strife*. Desine *desist* tandem *at length* mollium querelarum *from effeminate complaints*.

82. Fungor *to discharge*, fruor *to enjoy*, utor *to use*, vescor *to live upon*, dignor *to think one's self worthy*, muto *to change*, et *and* composita *their compounds*, eî *and* supersedeo *to pass by*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* : ut *as*, Qui *he who* volet *shall desire* adipisci *to get* veram gloriam *true glory*, fungatur *should discharge* officiis *the duties* justitiæ *of justice*. Hannibal *Hannibal* cùm *when* posset *uti* *he might* have reaped *advantage* victoriâ *from his victory* maluit *preferred* frui *to reap only* pleasure. Quid *what* puer Ascanius *is become of the boy Ascanius*, superatne *does he survive* et *and* vescitur *aurâ* *breathe the air of life*? Equidem *truly* haud dignor *me* *I do not think myself worthy* tali honore *of such honor*. Diruit *he pulls down*, ædificat *he builds*, mutat *he changes* quadrata *square things* rotundis *for round*. Super-sedendum est *we must forbear* multitudine *a multitude* verborum *of words*.

83. *Pascor to feed upon et and nitor to lean upon junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative case, vel either sine præpositione without a preposition, vel or cum præpositione with a preposition: ut as, Pascuntur they feed floribus on flowers et and victu on the food simplicis herbæ of the plain herb. Livor envy pascitur feeds in vivis on the living. Juvenis the youth qui nititur who leans purâ hastâ on a bright spear. Salus the safety civitatis of the state nitebatur depended in vitâ on the life Pompeii of Pompey.*

84. *Ablativus the ablative case dicitur is called absolutus absolute quoties as often as substantivum the substantive construitur is construed in ablativo in the ablative cum participio with a participle, vel or adjectivo an adjective, (interdum sometimes etiam even cum alio substantivo with another substantive,) ut denotet to denote tempus the time vel or modum the manner vel aliam rem comitantem or any other accompanying circumstance; ut as, Archilochus Archilochus floruit flourished Romulo regnante when Romulus was king. Nihil nothing agi potest can be done de hâc re in this matter salvis legibus without violating the laws. Exposito it being shown quid iniquitas loci posset what great influence the unfavourable nature of the ground had. Me duce if I am the leader tutus eris you will be safe.*

85. *Ablativus an ablative case partis of the part affectæ affected, et and poëticè by the poets accusativus an accusative, additur is added verbis quibusdam to some verbs: ut as, Micat he quivers auribus in his ears et and tremit trembles artus as to his limbs.*

(a.) *Quædam some of these verbs usurpantur are used (ad usum Græcorum in imitation of the usage of the Greeks, sed but rarissimè very rarely,) etiam also cum genitivo with a genitive case: ut as, Facis you act absurdè absurdly, qui who angas tormentest te yourself animi in mind.*

86. *Exsulo to be banished admittit admits ablativum an ablative, venio to be sold ablativum an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition, vapulo to be beaten ablativum an ablative vel either sine præpositione without a preposition vel or cum præpositione with a preposition: ut as, Utar tamen but I will use mente my mind quæ which sola alone non exsulat is not banished loco from its place. Respondit he answered se that he malle preferred spoliari to be plundered à cive by a citizen, quàm venire to being sold ab hoste by an enemy.*

Testis the witness rogatus est was asked an whether vapulâsset he had been beaten fustibus with clubs ab reo by the prisoner. Sentiet he shall feel se that he vapulare is stricken sermonibus by the discourse omnium of every one.

87. VERBA infinita *verbs of the infinitive mood* adduntur *are put after* quibusdam verbis *some verbs*, et *and* participiis *participles*, et *and* adjectivis *adjectives* : ut *as*, Amor *love* jussit *commanded me* scribere *to write* quæ *what things* puduit *I was ashamed* dicere *to speak*. Jussus *being ordered* confundere *foedus to violate the treaty*. Erat *he was* tum *then* dignus *worthy* amari *to be loved*.

88. Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking*, hortandi *of exhorting*, imperandi *of commanding*, et *and* contraria *the contrary*, raro *seldom* (nisi *except* apud *poetas in the poets*) habent *have* infinitivum *an infinitive* post se *after them*, plerumque *vero but usually* conjunctionem *a conjunction* cum *subjunctivo with* the *subjunctive mood* : ut *as*, Oro *et* hortor *te illud this I beg and exhort you*, ut *sis to be* diligentissimus *most diligent* in munere tuo *in your office*. Moneo *I warn* obtestorque *and entreat you*, ne *hos negligas not to neglect these people* qui *propinqui tibi sunt genere are near to you in family*. Themistocles *Themistocles* persuasit *populo persuaded the people* ut *classis that a fleet* ædificaretur *should be built*.

(a.) Ex his *vero but of these verbs* jubeo *to command* et *and* veto *to forbid* etiam *in pedestri sermone even in prose* sæpius *junguntur are more frequently joined* infinitivo *to an infinitive* : ut *as*, Hannibal *Hannibal* jussit *ordered* Tarentinos *the Tarentines* convocari *to be summoned* sine armis *without arms*.

89. Conjunctio *a conjunction* cum *subjunctivo with a subjunctive mood* semper *sequitur always follows* verba efficiendi *verbs of causing* : ut *as*, Tu *do you* facito *ut sciam take care that I know* quicquid *indagâris whatever you find out* de republicâ *about the republic*.

90. Conjunctio *a conjunction* cum *subjunctivo with a subjunctive* plerumque *sequitur always follows* verba accidendi *verbs of happening* et *and* similia *the like* : ut *as*, Persæpe *evenit it very often happens* ut *that* utilitas *expediency* certet *is at variance* cum *honestate with honesty*. Quoniam *since* satisfeci *I have satisfied* amicis *my friends*, reliquum *est it remains* ut *egomet mihi consulam for me to take care of myself*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

figure ellipsis : ut *as*, Hinc upon this spargere in vulgum [*he began*] to scatter abroad voces ambiguas doubtful sayings, et and conscius knowing himself guilty quærere to seek arma means to destroy me. (Incipiebat *he began*, subauditur hîc is here understood.)

95. GERUNDIA in di gerunds in di habent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with genitivis genitive cases, et and pendent depend à substantivis on substantives, vel or ab adjectivis on adjectives, nunquam never à verbis on verbs : ut *as*, Innatus amor a natural desire habendi of getting honey urget excites Cecropias apes the Attic bees. Æneas, celsâ in puppi in his tall ship jam certus already determined eundi to go.

96. Gerundia in do gerunds in do habent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with dativis datives et and ablativis ablatives : ut *as*, Illud that commune est is common ediscendo to learning scribendoque and writing. Vitium the disease alitur is nourished vivitque and lives tegendo by being concealed.

(a.) Præpositio the preposition sine without nunquam usurpatur is never used cum gerundiis in do with gerunds in do.

97. Gerundia in dum gerunds in dum habent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum accusativis with accusatives, sed but semper exigunt always require præpositionem a preposition præcedentem preceding them : ut *as*, Locus a place amplissimus very honourable ad agendum to plead in. Mores puerorum the characters of boys detegunt se simplicius discover themselves with more plainness inter ludendum whilst they are playing.

98. Si if verbum the verb regit governs accusativum an accusative, gerundivum the gerundive sæpius usurpatur is oftener used quàm than gerundium the gerund : ut *as*, Timotheus Timotheus peritus fuit was skilful civitatis regendæ in governing a state. Duci to be persuaded præmio by a bribe ad accusandos homines to accuse men, est is proximum next akin latrocinio to robbery.

(a.) Utor to use, fruor to enjoy, fungor to discharge, potior to gain, usurpantur are used eodem modo in the same manner : ut *as*, Olim formerly bene morati men of good character videntur appear reges constituti to have been

appointed kings causâ for the sake fruendæ justitiæ of enjoying justice. Tradiderat ei he had given him omnia bona all his property utenda to be made use of.

99. Gerundivum *the gerundive* in nominativo *in the nominative case* (et *and* in accusativo *in the accusative*, cùm *when* verbum *a verb* infinitivi modi *of the infinitive mood* adjungitur *is added* vel *or* subauditur *understood*) indicat *indicates* necessitatem *necessity*, vel *or* officium *propriety*, vel *or* possibilitatem *possibility* : ut *as*, Orandum est *one must pray* ut sit mens sana *to have a sound mind* in corpore sano *in a sound body*. Diligentia *industry* est *is* præcipuè *especially* colenda *to be cultivated* nobis *by us*, et *and* semper adhibenda *always* to be employed. Putabat *he thought* eos *them* observandos *to be attended to* et colendos *and respected* à se *by him*.

100. SUPINUM in um *the supine in um* habet *has* activam significationem *an active signification*, et *and* sequitur *follows* verbum *a verb* significans *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place* : ut *as*, Veniunt *they come* spectatum *to see*, veniunt *they come* ut *that* ipsæ *they themselves* spectentur *may be seen*.

101. Supinum in u *the supine in u* habet *has* passivam significationem *a passive signification*, et *and* sequitur *follows* adjectiva *adjectives* : ut *as*, Quod *that which* est *is* foedum *foul* factu *to be done*, idem *the same* est *is* et *also* turpe *shameful* dictu *to be spoken*.

102. VERBA *verbs* quæ *which* non habent *have not* nominativum *a nominative case*, neque inflectuntur *and are not declined* ultra *beyond* tertiam personam singularem *the third person singular* et *and* infinitivum *the infinitive*, dicuntur *are called* impersonalia *verbs impersonal* : ut *as*, Hinc *on one side* tonat *it thunders*, hinc *on the other* æther *the sky* abrumpitur *is rent asunder* missis ignibus *by lightnings* darded down.

103. Hæc impersonalia *these impersonals*, interest *it concerns*, et *and* refert *it concerns*, junguntur *are joined* quibuslibet genitivis *to any genitive cases*, et *and* his ablativis *to these ablative cases*, meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ : ut *as*, Interest *it concerns* magistratûs *the magistrate* tueri *to defend* bonos *the good*. Tuâ refert *it concerns* you nôsse *to know* teipsum *yourself*.

(a.) Et *also* hi genitivi *these genitive cases* adduntur *are*

added, tanti so much, quanti how much, magni much, parvi little, pluris more, minoris less, et and similia similar words: ut as, Tanti refert of such concern it is agere to do honesta honest things.

104. Verba impersonalia *impersonal verbs* regunt *govern* casus *cases* pro sensu *according to their meaning*, more aliorum verborum *like other verbs*: ut *as*, Minimè decet *it does not at all become* oratorem *an orator* irasci *to be angry*. Licuit Themistocli *it was in the power of Themistocles* esse *to be* etioso *indolent*.

105. Præpositio *ad the preposition ad* propriè additur *is peculiarly added* his verbis *to these verbs*, attinet *it belongs*, pertinet *it pertains*, spectat *it concerns*: ut *as*, Vis *would you have me* me dicere *to speak* quod *what* attinet *belongs* ad te *to you?*

106. Decet *it becomes*, attinet, et *and* spectat *it concerns*, quamvis *although* dicuntur *they are called* impersonalia *impersonals* sæpe *often* habent *have* nominativum *a nominative case*, et *and* sæpe *often* inveniuntur *are often found* in tertiâ personâ plurali *in the third person plural*: ut *as*, Candida pax *fair peace* decet *becomes* homines *men*, trux ira *savage passion* feras *wild beasts*. Quæ *things which* nihil *attinent* *are nothing to the purpose*. Ea *these things* non spectant *have no reference* ad religionem *to religion*.

107. Accusativus *an accusative case* personæ *of the person*, cum genitivo *with a genitive* rei *of the thing*, subjicitur *is put* after his impersonalibus *these verbs impersonal*, pœnitet *it repents*, tædet *it wearies*, miseret *it pities*, pudet *it shames*, piget *it grieves*: ut *as*, Malo me pœniteat *I had rather repent* fortunæ *of my fortune* quam *than* pudeat *be ashamed* victoriæ *of my victory*. Non solum me piget *I am not only sorry* stultitiæ meæ *for my folly*, sed etiam *but even* pudet *I am* ashamed of it. Miseret nos *we pity* eorum *them*. Si *if* non pertæsum fuisset *I were not weary* thalami tædæque *of the marriage bed and the marriage torch*.

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* res *the thing* exprimitur *is expressed* vel *either* verbo infinitivi modi *by a verb in the infinitive mood*, vel *or* conjunctione *with the conjunction* quòd *because* et *and* verbo *and a verb*: ut *as*, Non me pudet *I am not* ashamed fateri *to confess* nescire *that I am ignorant* quòd *quòd* nesciam *of what I am ignorant*. Pœnitet me *I repent* quòd *quòd* te offendi *of having offended you*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

et quingentos passus *about a mile and a half* ab urbe *from the city*. Dicimus etiam *we say also*, Abest *he is distant* bidui *two days' journey* : ubi *where* itinere, vel or iter, subauditur *is understood*.

112. OMNE verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* genitivum *a genitive case* nominis *of the name* oppidi *of a city or town* in quo *in which* actio *fit any thing is done* ; modò *so that* sit *it be* primæ *of the first* vel or secundæ *declinationis the second declension*, et *and* singularis *numeri of the singular number* : ut *as*, Quid faciam *what shall I do* Romæ *at Rome* ?

(a.) Hi genitivi *these genitive cases*, domi *at home*, humi *upon the ground*, militiæ *in war*, belli *in war*, sequuntur *follow* formam *the construction* nominum *propriorum of proper names* : ut *as*, Præterea *besides* augeant *let them strengthen the republic* quibuscunque *rebus in whatever matters* poterunt *they can* vel *either* belli *in war* vel or domi *at home*. Bos *the ox* procumbit *lies dead* humi *on the ground*. Fuimus *we were* semper *always* unà *together* militiæ *in war* et *and* domi *at home*.

113. Verùm *but* si *if* nomen *the name* oppidi *of a city or town* fuerit *shall be* pluralis *numeri of the plural number*, aut or *tertiae declinationis of the third declension*, ponitur *it is put* in ablativo *in the ablative case* : ut *as*, Colchus *a Colchian*, an or Assyrius *an Assyrian*, nutritus *brought up* Thebis *at Thebes*, an or Argis *at Argos*. Ventosus *being inconstant*, Romæ *at Rome* amo *I love* Tibur *Tibur*, Tibure *at Tibur* Romam *I love Rome*.

114. Nomen *the name* oppidi *of a town* vel or insulæ *of an island* additur *is put* after verbis *verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place* in accusativo *in the accusative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition* : ut *as*, Atque *and* aliquis *some one* inquit *will say*, Jam nunc *now* then eat *let him go* doctas Athenas *to the learned Athens*.

(a.) Domus *a house* et *and* rus *the country* sequuntur *follow* hanc constructionem *this construction* : ut *as*, Capellæ *ye she-goats*, saturæ *being full*, ite domum *go home*, Hesperus *the evening* venit *approaches*, ite *be gone*. Ego *I* rus ibo *will go into the country*.

115. Nomen *the name* oppidi *of a town* vel or insulæ *of an island* additur *is put* after verbis *verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum *motion* à loco *from a place* in ablativo *in the ablative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition* : ut *as*, Nisi

profectus esses *if you had not gone* Româ *from Rome* antè *before*, relinqueres *you would leave* eam *it* nunc *now*.

(a.) Perraro *very seldom* post verba motûs *after verbs of motion* præpositiones *prepositions* inveniuntur *are found* ante nomina *before the names* urbium *of cities*: ut as, Adolescens *while a youth* miles profectus sum *I went as a soldier* ad Capuam *to Capua*. Segesta *Segesta* condita est *was built* ab Æneâ *by Æneas* fugiente *when flying* à Trojâ *from Troy*.

(b.) Interdum etiam *sometimes even* regionum nomina *the names of countries* ponuntur *are put* post verba motûs *after verbs of motion* in accusativo *in the accusative* vel or ablativo *in the ablative* pro sensu *according to the sense* sine præpositione *without a preposition*: ut as, Germanicus *Germanicus* proficiscitur *sets out* Ægyptum *for Egypt*. Dein *then* Piso *Piso* statuit *determined* abire *to depart* Syriâ *from Syria*.

(c.) Apud poetas *in the poets* quodvis substantivum *any substantive* quod *which* sequitur *follows* verbum motûs *a verb of motion* ad locum *to a place*, interdum ponitur *is sometimes put* in accusativo *in the accusative case*: ut as, Dido *Dido* et *and* dux Trojanus *the Trojan leader* deveniunt *come to* eandem speluncam *the same cave*. Refers *you utter* verba *words* non pervenientia *which do not reach* nostras aures *my ears*.

116. ADVERBIA *adverbs* loci *of place*, ubi *where*, ubique *everywhere*, ubicunque *everywhere*, usquam *anywhere*, nusquam *nowhere*, huc *hither*, eo *thither*, quo *whither*, et cætera *and the rest*, interdum *sometimes* habent post se *have after them* genitivos *the genitive cases* terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum, et *and* cùm *when* significant *they signify* gradum *degree*, alios genitivos *other genitives*: ut as, Ubicunque terrarum et gentium *in whatever country and nation* jus civium Romanorum *the rights of Roman citizens* violatum est *have been violated*, pertinet ad *it concerns* communem causam *the common cause* libertatis *of liberty*. Videmini *you seem* nescire *to be ignorant* quo amentia *to what a pitch of folly* progressi sitis *you have gone*. Venturus eram *I was about to come* eo miseriarum *to that degree of misery*.

(a.) Sic *so* post *after* tum, tunc, *then*, genitivus temporis *the genitive temporis* aliquando occurrit *sometimes occurs*, sed *but* non *not* apud optimos auctores *among the best authors*: ut as, Poteram *I could do* nihil *nothing* ampliùs *more* tunc temporis *at that time* quàm *than* flere *weep*.

117. *Pridie the day before* et and *postridie the day after* admittunt admit genitivum diei *the genitive diei* post se *after them*, et and accusativum an accusative partium of the parts mensis of a month, vel or nominum of the names festorum of festivals : ut as, *Pridie ejus diei the day before that day* venit he came in *Senatum into the Senate*. *Pridie calendas the day before the calends* abiit he departed.

118. Adverbia quantitatis *adverbs of quantity* admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case : ut as, *Satis eloquentiæ eloquence enough*, *sapientiæ parùm little wisdom*.

119. Quædam adverbia *some adverbs* admittunt admit eosdem casus *the same cases* qui as exiguntur *are required* à vocibus *by the words* à quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived* : ut as, *Sulpicius Gallus Sulpicius Gallus* studuit *Græcis literis studied Greek literature* maximè *most* omnium nobilium of all the nobles. *Exercitum habuit he kept his army* quàm proximè *as near as possible* hostem *to the enemy*.

120. Ergo *for the sake of* habet has genitivum a genitive case post se *after it* : ut as, *Donari to be rewarded* ergo *for the sake of* virtutis *virtue* benevolentiaque and kindness.

121. Procul *far from* interdum *sometimes* jungitur is joined ablativo *to an ablative case* : ut as, *Multi many men* gessere *have managed* suam rem *their own affairs* et publicam and those of the state benè *well* procul *far* patriâ *from their country*.

(a.) Apud *in the* poetas *poets* et and scriptores *prose writers* serioris ævi *of a later age* clam *without the knowledge of*, palam *in the presence of*, et and simul *together with*, junguntur are joined ablativo *to an ablative case* ; et and aliquando *sometimes* usque *as far as* cum accusativo *with an accusative* vel or ablativo *an ablative* : ut as, *Clam without the knowledge of* uxore meâ *my wife* et and filio *my son*. *Simul his together with these* dicere possum *I may mention* te *you*, candide Furni o *excellent Furnius*. *Velabant they covered* corpora *their bodies* usque pedes *as far as their feet* carbaso *with linen*.

122. CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ *conjunctions copulative* et and disjunctivæ *disjunctive* conjungunt couple similes casus *the like cases*, modos *moods*, et and tempora *tenses* : ut as, *Socrates Socrates* docuit *taught* Xenophontem *Xenophon* et and Platonem *Plato*. *Nec scribit he neither writes* nec legit *nor reads*. *Occidit he has died* flebilior *more to be wept* nulli *by no one* quàm than tibi *by you*, *Virgili o Virgil*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

127. Dummodo *as long as (not of time)* et *and* dum, vel or modo, usurpata *when used* pro *for* dummodo, junguntur *are joined* subjunctivo soli *to a subjunctive mood only*: ut *as*, Omnia postposui *I thought everything of little consequence* dummodo *as long as* parerem *I could obey* præceptis *the precepts* patris *of my father*. Oderint *let them hate me* dum provided *that* metuant *they fear me*. Manent ingenia *their faculties remain* senibus *to old men* modo *provided* studium *study* et industria *and industry* permaneat *remain*.

128. Quum *since, as*, significans *signifying* causam *the cause* vel or denotans *denoting* connectionem aliquam *any connection* duarum sententiarum *between two sentences* jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*; si *if* usurpetur *it be used* pro *for* quòd *because*, indicativo *to an indicative*: ut *as*, Druentia *the Durance*, quum *although* vehat *it comes down* vim aquæ ingentem *a great body of water*, non tamen patiens est *will not however bear* navium *vessels*. Quum *since* vita *life* sine amicis *without friends* plena sit *is full* insidiarum *of treachery* et metûs *and fear*, ratio ipsa *reason itself* monet *warns us* comparare *to form* amicitias *friendships*. Præclarè facis *you do well* quum tenes *in preserving* memoriam *the recollection* Luculli *of Lucullus*.

129. Quum *as*, sequente tum *when followed by* tum *so*, jungitur *is joined* interdum *sometimes* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*, sæpius *more frequently* indicativo *to an indicative*: ut *as*, Quum multæ res *as many things* in philosophiâ *in philosophy* nequicquam *satis explicatæ sint* *have been by no means sufficiently explained*, tum *so* also quæstio *the question* de naturâ Deorum *about the nature of the Gods* perdifficilis est *is very difficult*. Quum cupio *I both desire* consequi *to acquire* ipsam cognitionem *the knowledge* juris augurii *of the laws of sooth-saying*, tum mehercule *and in truth* incredibiliter delector *I am incredibly delighted* tuis studiis *with your studies*.

130. Quum *when*, tempus significans *meaning* time, jungitur *is joined* interdum *sometimes* indicativo *to the indicative*, interdum *sometimes* subjunctivo *to the subjunctive*: ut *as*, Qui he who non propulsat *does not repel* injuriam *injury* a suis *from his friends*, quum potest *when he can*, injuste facit *acts unjustly*. Quinque nobiles juvenes *five noble youths* venerunt *came* ad Hannibalem *to Hannibal* quum esset *when he was* ad lacum Averni *at lake Avernus*. Erit illud profectò tempus *the time indeed will come* quum when desideres *you will long for* fidem *the attachment* gravissimi hominis *of a most worthy man*.

131. *Antequam et and priusquam before that* junguntur *are joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood* si *if* res *the matter* est *is* in dubio *in doubt*, vel *or* si *if* duæ res *the two matters* de quibus agitur *which are spoken of* connectuntur *are connected*; aliter *otherwise* admittunt *they admit* indicativum *an indicative*: ut *as*, Tempestas *a tempest* minatur *threatens* antequam surgat *before it rises*. Omnia *all things* veneunt *are sold* antequam *before* una gleba *one clod of earth* ematur *is bought*. Quàm benè *how happily* vivebant *men lived* Saturno rege *when Saturn was king*, priusquam *before* tellus *the earth* patefacta est *was levelled* in longas vias *into long roads*.

132. *Quin et and quominus but that* sequentia *following* negationem *a negation* vel *or* dubitationem *a doubt*, vel simile aliquid *or any similar expression*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Non dubitat *he does not doubt* quin *but that* Troja *Troy* peritura sit *will perish* brevi *in a short* time. Parmenio *Parmenio* voluit *wished* detertere *to deter* Philippum *Philip* quominus biberet *from drinking* medicamentum *the medicine*. Solitudines *solitude* non protegebant *did not protect* Tiberium *Tiberius* quin fateretur *from confessing* tormenta *the torments* pectoris *of his breast*.

133. *Conjunctiones finales the final conjunctions* ut *that*, quo *so that*, ne *that not*, et *and* aliæ *others* derivatæ *derived* ab his *from them*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Pylades *Pylades* dixit *said* se *that* he Oresten esse *was Orestes*, ut necaretur *that he might be put to death* pro illo *for him*. Oportet *it is desirable* legem *that a law* brevem esse *should be short* quo *in order that* facilius teneatur *it may be more easily comprehended* ab imperitis *by the ignorant*. Vereor *I fear* ne augeam *lest I may be increasing* tuum laborem *your trouble*.

134. *Ut, cùm when* significat *it signifies* tempus *time* vel *or* comparationem *a comparison*, habet *has* indicativum *an indicative mood* post se *after it*: ut *as*, Ut *since* sumus *we have been* in Ponto *in Pontus*, Ister *the Danube* ter constitit *has thrice been stopped* frigore *by cold*. Ut *as* columbæ *doves*, timidissima turba *a most timid band*, fugiunt *fly from* aquilam *an eagle*.

(a.) *Ut, pro for ubi where*, (rarus est usus *it is a rare usage*) jungitur *is joined* indicativo *to an indicative*: ut *as*, Ut *where* littus *the shore* tunditur *is beaten* longè resonante *Eoâ undâ* by the far-sounding *Eastern wave*.

135. *Ut, pro for quamvis although, jungitur is joined subjunctivo to a subjunctive mood : ut as, Ut although fueris you were dignior the more worthy, competitor your competitor non est in culpâ is not in fault.*

136. *Utinam I wish that exigit requires subjunctivum a subjunctive mood : ut as, Utinam I wish that tu quoque you also mutabilis esses were changeable cum ventis as well as the winds. Utinam I wish ne verè scriberem illud I did not write that with truth.*

137. *Licet although jungitur is joined subjunctivo to a subjunctive mood ; quamvis although subjunctivo to a subjunctive sæpius oftener quam than indicativo to an indicative, nisi except apud poetas among the poets ; quanquam although indicativo to an indicativesæpius oftenerquam than subjunctivo to a subjunctive ; etsi although vel either indicativo to an indicative vel or subjunctivo to a subjunctive : ut as, Improbitas dishonesty licet although molesta sit it be troublesome adversario to one's adversary invisâ est is hateful judici to the judge. Id quod turpe est that which is base, quamvis although occultetur it may be concealed, tamen nullo modo potest fieri can by no means be rendered honestum honourable. Romani the Romans, quanquam although fessi erant they were weary prælio of fighting, tamen yet procedunt advance. Viri boni good men faciunt do multa many things ob eam causam quod decet because it is right, etsi although vident they see nullum emolumentum no advantage consecuturum likely to ensue.*

138. *Si if et and nisi unless, cùm when indicatur it is indicated rem that the thing de quâ agitur of which one is speaking vel existere either exists, vel posse existere or may exist, junguntur are joined indicativo modo to the indicative mood, vel or præsentî to the present vel perfecto or perfect tense subjunctivi of the subjunctive ; cùm when indicatur it is indicated rem that the thing non existere does not exist, exigunt they require imperfectum the imperfect vel or plusquam perfectum the plusquam-perfect subjunctivi of the subjunctive : ut as, Debebas colere you ought to respect hunc this man patri loco as you would your father, si if esset there were ulla pieta any piety in te in you. Si if unquam ever visus sum I have appeared tibi to you fortis brave, certe certainly me admiratus esses you would have admired me in illâ causâ in that cause. Tu cave do you beware, nisi unless debes ludibrium you are bent on becoming the sport ventis of the winds. Multa many*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

indicativo *to an indicative mood*: ut *as*, Tunc *did you* veritus *es fear id that?* Num piget eum *is he sorry* facti *for his deed?* Quis fuit *who was he* qui primus *who first* protulit *produced* horrendos enses *horrible swords?*

144. QUI *who* significans *signifying* causam *the cause* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Clusini *the Clusians* misere *sent* legatos *ambassadors* Romam *to Rome* qui peterent *to beg for* auxilium *aid* a Senatu *from the Senate*. Voluptas *pleasure* non est digna *is not worthy* ad quam sapiens respiciat *that a wise man should regard it*.

145. Cùm vero *but when* relativa propositio *a relative proposition* supplet locum *supplies the place* substantivi *of a substantive*, verbum *the verb* ponitur *is put* in indicativo *in the indicative*: ut *as*, Num alii oratores *is one class of orators* probantur *approved of* à *multitudine* *by the multitude*, alii *another* ab iis qui intelligunt *(i.e. à sapientibus) by intelligent people?* Placavi *I appeased* quoscumque *all whom* I heard querentes *complaining* de te *of you*.

146. Omnes voces *all words* positæ *placed* indefinitè *indefinitely*, vel *or* in obliquâ oratione *in an indirect sentence*, vel *or* sententiâ *in a sentence* pendente ab aliâ *depending on another*, postulant *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Innocentia *innocence* est *is* talis affectio *such a disposition* animi *of mind* quæ *as* noceat *hurts* nemini *no one*. Video *I see* cui scribam *to whom I am writing*. Credite *believe* experto *one who has tried* quantus *how (with what might)* assurgat *he rises* in clypeum *against the shield*, quo turbine *with what force* torqueat *he hurls* hastam *the spear*.

147. PRÆPOSITIONES *the prepositions* adversum *adversus* *against*, cis *citra* *on this side*, apud *near*, ante *before*, penesque *and in the power of*, intra *within*, infra *below*, contra *against*, supra *above*, post *after*, circiter *about (of time)*, inter *between*, or among, circa *circum* *around*, ultra *beyond*, juxta *near*, erga *towards*, præter *besides, or except*, et *and* extra *without*, ob *on account of*, prope *near*, per *through*, propter *on account of, and near*, versus *towards*, trans *across*, pone *behind*, secundum *according to*, ad *to*, regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative*: ut *as*, Quem penes *in whose power* arbitrium *the decision* is. Ter *thrice* raptaverat *he had hurried* Hectora *Hector* circum *around* Iliacos muros *the Irojan walls* Propter *near* aquas

the waters. Amicitia *friendship* expetenda est *is to be sought* propter se *for its own sake.* Fugiens *flying from* pauperiem *poverty* per mare *over the sea.* Ludi *games* facti sunt *were celebrated* per decem dies *for ten days.* Per me unum *by my means alone* effectum est *has it been caused* ut *that* libertas *liberty* maneret *remains* in civitate *in the city.* Sophocles *Sophocles* fecit *composed* tragœdias *tragedies* ad summam *till extreme* senectutem *old age.* Locavi castra *I pitched my camp* ad Cybistra *at Cybistra.* Aliquot post menses *after some months* venit *he came* ad Cæsarem *to Cæsar.* Atra cura *ill-omened care* sedet *sits* post equitem *behind the horseman.* Cæsar *Cæsar* transduxit *led* copias suas *his forces* præter castra *by the camp.* Condemnatus est *he was condemned* omnibus *sententiis* *by all the votes* præter unam *but one.*

148. A (ante vocalem *before a vowel* ab) *from*, absque, sine *without*, coram *in the presence of*, cum *with*, de *concerning or from*, e (ante vocalem *before a vowel* ex) *out of*, præ *before*, for, pro *for*, in front of, regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative*: ut *as*, A te *from you* is principium *the beginning*, desinet *it shall end* tibi *with you.* Discordia est mihi *I have a quarrel* tecum *with you.* Infans *an infant* animosus *spirited* non sine *not without* Dîs *the favour of the Gods.* Non potuit loqui *he could not speak* præ mœrore *for fear.* Stabat *he was standing* pro templo *in front of the temple* et *and* tenebat *was occupying* Capitolia celsa *the lofty Capitol.* Cuncta *everything* erant *was* pro hostibus *in favour of the enemy.* E consulatu *from his consulship* profectus est *he went* in Galliam *into Gaul.* Gessimus *we have administered* rempublicam *the republic* feliciter *successfully*, et *and* ex meâ *sententiâ* *according to my wish.*

149. In, super, sub, et *and* subter (quod tamen *which however* rarò *invenitur* *is seldom found*) regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative* vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* pro sensu *according to the sense in which they are used*: ut *as*, Imperium *the empire* Jovis *of Jupiter* est *is* in reges ipsos *over kings themselves.* Venit *he came* in Senatum *into the Senate.* Lucus *was* fuit *there was* a grove in arce summâ *in the highest part of the citadel.* Proferet *he shall extend* imperium *his dominion* super *beyond* et *both* Garamantas *the Garamantes* et *and* Indos *the Indians.* Rogitans *asking* multa *many things* super Priamo *about Priam*, multa *many* super Hectore *about Hector.*

Venator *the huntsman* manet *remains* sub Jove frigido *under the cold sky*. Sub eas literas *after those letters* tuæ *yours* statim sunt recitatae *were immediately read*. Multaque *and many things* me fugiunt *are forgotten by me* spectata *which were seen* primis sub annis *in my earliest years*. Exercitus ejus *his army* missus est *was sent* sub jugum *under the yoke*. Duxit *he led* Æneam *Æneas* subter fastigia *under the roof* augusti tecti *of a small house*. Tuti safe subter *under* densâ testudine *a thick penthouse of shields*.

150. Tenus *as far as* regit *governs* ablativum singularem *an ablative singular*, ablativum vel genitivum pluralem *an ablative or genitive plural*, et *and* semper *always* sequitur *follows* casum suum *its case* : ut *as*, Abdidit ensem *he plunged his sword* lateri *in his side* capulo *up to the hilt*. Et *and* paleari *his dewlap* pendent *hangs down* à mento *from his chin* crurum *his legs*. Altera sagitta *the second arrow* acta est *was driven* per jugulum *through his throat* pennis *up to the feathers*.

151. Præpositio *a preposition* in compositione *in composition* nonnunquam *sometimes* regit *governs* eundem casum *the same case* quem *which* regebat *it governed* extra compositionem *out of composition* : ut *as*, Detrudunt *they thrust off* naves *the ships* scopulo *from the rock*. Prætereunt *they pass* scopulos *the rocks* Ithacæ *of Ithaca*.

152. Verba *verbs* composita *compounded* cum *with* à, ab, ad, con, de, et *and* aliis præpositionibus *other prepositions*, sæpe *often* repetunt *repeat* eandem præpositionem *the same preposition* : ut *as*, Abstinerunt *they abstained* à vino *from wine*.

153. INTERJECTIONES *interjections* non rarò ponuntur *are often put* sine casu *without a case* : ut *as*, Connixa *having yearned* reliquit *she left* spem gregis *the hope of the flock*, ah *alas!* silice in nudâ *upon the bare flint stones*.

154. O, vocantis *uttered by one calling* jungitur *is joined* vocativo *to a vocative case*, exclamantis *by one exclaiming* vocativo *to a vocative* vel *or* accusativo *an accusative* : ut *as*, O nimium fortunatos agricolas *O too fortunate husbandmen*, si nôrint *if they knew* sua bona *their own happiness!* O formose puer *O beautiful boy*, ne crede *trust not* nimium *too much* colori *to your beauty*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

PROSODIA CONSTRUED.

PROSODIA *prosody* est *is* pars *that part* Grammaticæ of Grammar, quæ *which* docet *teaches* quantitatem *the quantity* (or, *due sound*) syllabarum of syllables.

Prosodia *prosody* dividitur *is divided* in tres partes *into three parts*; tonum *the tone*, spiritum *the breathing*, et *and* tempus *the time*.

Hoc loco *in this place* visum est nobis *it is thought most proper* tractare *to treat* tantùm *only* de tempore of time.

TEMPUS *time* est *is* mensura *the measure* syllabæ proferendæ of a syllable to be uttered (or, of the pronouncing a syllable.)

Tempus breve *a short time* notatur *is distinguished* sic *thus* (˘): ut *as for example*, Dõmĩnũs *the Lord*; autem *but* longum *a long time* sic *in this manner* (—): ut *as*, cõtrã *against*.

Pes *a foot* est *is* constitutio *the placing together* duarum syllabarum of two syllables plurimumve *or more* ex certâ observatione *according to the certain observation* temporum of the times (or, measures of the syllables.)

Pes *a foot* duarum longarum syllabarum of two long syllables est *is* spondæus *a spondee*; ut *as*, virtus *virtue*.

Longa syllaba *a long syllable* duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus *with two short syllables following* efficit *makes* dactylum *a dactyl*; ut *as*, scribere *to write*.

SCANSIO *scanning* est *is* legitima commensuratio *the measuring according to rule* versûs of a verse in singulos pedes *in every one* (or, each one) of the feet.

Scansioni *to scanning a verse* accidunt *there belong* figuræ *the figures* called Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, et *and* Cæsura.

I. Synalœpha, est *is* elisio *the striking out* vocalis of a vowel in fine *at the end* dictionis of a word ante alteram *before* another vowel in initio *at the beginning* sequentis of the following word; ut *as*, vit' viv' *are here put* pro *for* vita vive, *in this verse*: Crastina vita *to-morrow's life* est *is* nimis sera *too late*, vive live hodie *to-day*.

At *but* *heu*, *et and* *ô*, *nunquam* *intercipiuntur* *are never struck out (or, cut off.)*

II. *Ecthlipsis*, *est is* *quoties as often as* *m* *the letter m* *perimitur is cut off* *cum suâ vocali with its vowel*, *proximâ dictione the next word* *exorsâ beginning a vocali with a vowel*; *ut as*, *Monstr' horrend'* *pro for* *monstrum horrendum*: *Monstrum a monster horrendum horrible*, *informe mis-shapen*, *ingens vast*, *cui lumen ademptum deprived of sight*.

III. *Synæresis*, *est is* *contractio the contraction* *duarum syllabarum of two syllables* *in unam into one*: *ut as*, *alvearia is pronounced* *quasi scriptum esset as if it had been written* *alvaria*: *ut as*, *Seu or whether* *alvearia the hives* *texta fuerint were wove* *lento vimine of the limber osier*.

IV. *Diæresis*, *est is* *ubi when* *ex unâ syllabâ of one syllable* *dissectâ being dissected (or, the letters separated)* *duæ two syllables* *fiunt are made*: *ut as*, *evoluisse pro for* *evoluisse*: *ut as*, *Debuerant they ought* *evoluisse to have unwound* *suos fusos their spindles*.

V. *Cæsura*, *est is* *cùm when* *post pedem absolutum after a perfect foot* *syllaba brevis a short syllable* *extenditur is made long* *in fine dictionis at the end of the word*: *ut as*, *Inhians intent upon* *pectoribus the breasts (of the victims)* *consulit she consults* *spirantia exta their panting entrails*.

Of the Kinds of Verses.

VERSUS heroicus an heroic verse, *qui which* *dicitur etiam is also called* *Hexameter an Hexameter*, *constat consists* *ex sex pedibus of six feet*: *Quintus locus the fifth place of the verse* *peculiariter peculiarly* *sibi vindicat claims to itself* *dactylum a dactyl*, *sextus the sixth place* *requires* *spondæum a spondee*; *reliqui the other places* *hunc vel illum have this or that foot (either a dactyl or a spondee)* *prout volumus even as we will*: *ut as*, *Tityre o Tityrus*, *tu thou* *recubans lying along* *sub tegmine under the covering* *patulæ fagi of a wide-spreading beech-tree*.

Spondæus a spondee *etiam aliquando sometimes* *reperitur is found* *in quinto loco in the fifth place*: *ut as*, *Cara soboles thou dear offspring* *deûm of the gods*, *magnum incrementum the illustrious progeny* *Jovis of Jupiter!*

Ultima syllaba the last syllable *cujuscunque versûs of every verse* *habetur is accounted* *communis common*.

VERSUS elegiacus *an elegiac verse*, qui et *which also* habet *hath* nomen *the name* Pentametri of *Pentameter*, constat *consisteth* è duplici Penthemimeri of *two Penthemimers*; quarum *prior the former of which* comprehendit *contains* duos pedes *two feet*, dactylicos *dactyls*, spondiacos *spondees*, vel or alterutros *either of them*, cum syllabâ longâ *with a long syllable*: altera *the other Penthemimer* etiam *contains also* duos pedes *two feet*, sed *but* omninò dactylicos *always* (or, *altogether*) dactyls, item *likewise* cum syllabâ longâ *with a long syllable*: ut *as*, Amor *love* est *is* res *a thing* plena *full* solliciti timoris *of anxious fear*.

Of the Quantity of first Syllables.

I. Vocalis *a vowel* ante duas consonantes *before two consonants*, aut or duplicem *a double consonant* in eâdem dictione *in the same word*, est *is* ubique longa *every where long* positione *by position*: ut *as in the words*, ventus *the wind*, axis *an axle-tree*, patrizo *to do like his father*.

II. Quòd si *but if* consonans *a consonant* claudat *endeth* priorem dictionem *the former word*, sequente *the following word* item *also* inchoante *beginning* a consonante *with a consonant*, vocalis præcedens *the vowel going before* etiam *also* longa erit *will be long* positione *by position*: ut *as*, Major sum *I am greater* quàm *than* cui *one whom* fortuna *fortune* possit *is able* nocere *to hurt*. Syllabæ *the syllables* jor, sum, quàm, et *and* sit, longæ sunt *are here long* positione *by position*.

(a.) At si *but if* prior dictio *the former word* exeat *ends* in vocalem brevem *in a short vowel*, sequente *the following word* incipiente *beginning* à duabus consonantibus *with two consonants*, interdum *sometimes* producitur *it is made long*, sed *but* rariùs *very seldom*: ut *as*, Ferte *bring* ferrum *arms* citi *promptly*, date tela *hurl your javelins*, scandite muros *scale the walls*.

III. Vocalis brevis *a short vowel* ante mutam *before a mute*, sequente liquidâ *a liquid following*, redditur *is rendered* communis *common*: ut *as in the words*, patris *of a father*, volucris *of a bird*. Quæ tamen regula *which rule* however non obtinet *does not prevail* in compositis *in compound words*: ut *as*, āmiror *I admire*, ābrīpio *I carry off*, sūbruo *I overthrow*, ōbruo *I overthrow*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

DERIVATIVA derivatives (or, words derived of others) ferè commonly sortiuntur have eandem quantitatem the same quantity cum primitivis with their primitives (or, the words they are derived from :) ut as, amator a lover, amicus a friend, amabilis amiable; primâ brevi the first syllable being short ab amo as being derived from the verb amo I love.

Excipiuntur tamen except however pauca a few words, quæ which deducta being derived a brevibus from short syllables, producunt make long primam syllabam the first syllable: ut as, como to deck the hair, a coma derived from coma the hair; fomes fuel et and fomentum an assuaging plaister a from foveo to cherish; humanus human, or humane, ab homo derived from homo a man or woman; jucundus pleasant, a from juvo to delight; jumentum a beast of burthen, a from juvo to help; lex legis a law, a from lego to read; macero to cause to waste away, a from macer thin; mobilis moveable, a from moveo to move; persona a mask, a from persono to sound through; rex regis a king, regina a queen, regula a rule, a from rego to rule; secius (comparative) a from secus otherwise; sedes a seat, a from sedeo to sit; stipendium pay a from stips stipsis a coin; tegula a tile, a from tego to cover; tragula a javelin (also a drag-net,) a from traho to draw; vox vocis a voice, a from voco to call.

Et and contrà on the other hand sunt there are some words quæ which deducta though derived a longis from primitives of a long syllable, corripiunt make short primam the first syllable: ut as, arena sand, arista the beard of corn, arundo a reed, ab derived from areo to be dry; aruspex a soothsayer, ab derived from ara an altar; dicax a jester, maledicus speaking ill, a from dico to speak; ditio power, a from ditis rich; dux ducis a leader, a from duco to lead; fides faith, perfidus perfidious, a from fido to trust; fragor a noise or crash, fragilis frail, a from frango to break; labo to totter, a from labor to slip; lucerna a candle, a from luceo to shine; molestus troublesome, a from moles trouble; odium hatred, ab from odi to hate; paciscor to bargain, a from pax pacis peace; quandoquidem since, a from quando when; siquidem since, a from si if; sopor a sound sleep, a from sopio to lull to sleep.

Et and alia nonnulla some other words ex utroque genere of either sort, quæ which relinquuntur are left observanda to be observed studiosis by the studios inter legendum in their reading.

COMPOSITA *compound words sequuntur follow* quantita-
tem *the quantity* simplicium *of their simple words*: ut *as,*
from lego legis *to read,* comes perlego *to read through*; à *from*
lego legas *to send as an ambassador,* allego *to allege* & accuse
by messengers; à *from* potens *powerful,* impotens *weak*; à
from solor *to cheer,* consolor *to comfort.*

Hæc tamen brevia *but these words having short syllables*
enata *though derived a longis from long syllables* excipiuntur
are excepted: ut *as,* dejero *to swear a great oath,* pejero *to*
forswear, a *from* juro *to swear*; innuba *unmarried,* pronuba
a bride's-maid, a *from* nubo *to be married.*

OMNE præteritum *every preterperfect tense* dissyllabum
of two syllables habet *hath* priorem *the former syllable* longam
long: ut *as,* legi *I have read,* emi *I have bought,* movi *I have*
moved.

1. Excipias tamen *but you must except the words,* bibi *I*
drank, dedi *I gave,* scidi *I have cut,* steti *I have stood,* stiti *I*
have stayed, tuli *I have borne or suffered,* et *and* fidi, a *from*
findo *to cleave.*

2. Geminantia *words that double* primam *the first syllable*
præteriti *of the preterperfect tense* habent *have* primam *the*
first syllable brevem *short*: ut *as,* cecidi *I have fallen,* à *from*
cado *to fall*; cecidi *I have beaten,* a *from* cædo *to beat*; didici
I have learned, fefelli *I have deceived,* momordi *I have bitten,*
pependi *I have weighed,* pupugi *I have pricked,* tetendi *I have*
stretched, tetigi *I have touched,* totondi *I have sheared,* tutudi
I have thumped.

SUPINUM dissyllabum *a supine of two syllables* habet
hath priorem *the former syllable* longam *long*: ut *as,* visum
to see, latum *to bear or suffer,* lotum *to wash,* motum *to move.*

Excipe *except* datum *to give,* itum *to go,* litum *to daub,*
ratum *to suppose,* rutum *to rush,* satum *to sow,* situm *to*
suffer, statum *to stop,* et *and* citum, a *from* ciego *cies* *to stir*
up; nam *for* citum, a *from* cio *cis* *to make to go,* quartæ *of*
the fourth conjugation, habet *hath* priorem *the former syllable*
longam *long.*

Penultima *the last syllable but one* tertiæ personæ pluralis
of the third person plural perfecti activi *of the perfect active*
desinens *ending in* -erunt *habenda est is to be considered*
communis common, si *if* antepenultima *the syllable before it*
brevis sit *be short.*

Of the Quantity of last Syllables,

I. A FINITA words ending in a *producuntur are made long* : ut *as*, ama *love thou*, contra *against*, erga *towards*.

Excipias *except*, ita *so*, quia *because*, eia *well*. Item also omnes casus *all cases in a ending in a*, cujuscunque fuerint generis *of whatever gender they are*, numeri *number*, aut or declinationis *declension*; præter *except* vocativos *the vocative cases à Græcis in as of Greek words ending in as* : ut *as*, O Ænea o Æneas : et *and* ablativum *the ablative case primæ declinationis of the first declension* : ut *as*, musâ *with a song*.

II. Desinentia words ending in b, d, t, puris *pure*, brevia sunt *are short* : ut *as*, ab *from*, ad *to*, caput *the head*.

III. Desinentia in c words ending in c *producuntur are made long* : ut *as*, ac *and*, sic *so*, et *and* adverbium *the adverb hic here*.

Sed *but* fac *do thou*, nec *neither*, donec *until*, corripuntur *are made short*.

Pronomen *the pronoun hic he*, et *and* neutrum ejus *its neuter hoc, modo so that non sit it be not ablativi casûs of the ablative case, communia sunt are common*.

IV. Finita e words ending in e brevia sunt *are short* : ut *as*, mare *the sea*, pene *almost*, lege *read thou*, scribe *write thou*.

1. Omnes voces *all words quintæ inflectionis of the fifth declension in e ending in e excipiendæ sunt are to be excepted* : ut *as*, fide *the ablative case of fides faith*, et *and* die *in the day*, unâ cum particulis *together with the particles indè enatis that are derived from it* : ut *as*, hodie *to-day*, quotidie *daily*, pridie *the day before*, postridie *the day after*; item also quare *wherefore*, et *and* si qua sunt similia *if there be any of the like sort*.

2. Et item *and also* secundæ personæ singulares *the second persons singular secundæ conjugationis of the second conjugation* : ut *as*, doce *teach*, move *move* : præter *except* cave *beware*, quod *which* plerumque *generally* corripit ultimam *makes the last syllable short*.

Etiam also monosyllaba *monosyllables in e ending in e producuntur are made long* : ut *as*, me *me*, te *thee*, se *himself or themselves* : præter *except* conjunctiones encliticas *the enclitical conjunctions, que and, n whether, ve or*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Accusativi quoque *also the accusative cases masculini masculine primæ declinationis of the first declension in an et en ending in and en producuntur are made long* : ut *as*, Ænean *Æneas*, Anchisen *Anchises* ; et *and* accusativi fœminini *feminine accusatives in an et ran in en and ran* : ut *as*, Penelopen *Penelope*, Electran *Electra* : cæteri fœminini *the other feminine accusatives in an ending in an corripuntur are short* : ut *as*, Maian *Maia*, Iphigenian *Iphigenia*.

VIII. O finita *words ending in o longa sunt are long* : ut *as*, dico *I say*, virgo *a virgin*, porro *moreover*, legendo *in reading*.

Modo *only et and composita ejus its compounds excipiuntur are excepted* ; et *and scio I know*, nescio *I know not*, puto *I suppose*, cito *soon*, ego *I*, homo *a man*, cedo *tell me*, quæ *which corripuntur are short*.

(a.) Pauca alia sunt verba *there are a few other verbs in o desinentia ending in o quæ which interdum sometimes corripunt shorten ultimam the last syllable* : ut *as*, Te peto *I demand you quem whom merui I have deserved*. Non ero *I will not be*, terra *o earth*, tuus *yours*. Fassa *confessing fortunam her fortune tegendo by covering vultus suos her face*. Sed *but hæc exempla these examples non sunt are not imitanda to be imitated à tironibus by beginners*.

Propria nomina *proper names virorum of men desinentia in o ending in o communia sunt are common* : ut *as*, Pollio, Nas o.

Duo quoque *also duo two et and nemo nobody habent have ultimam the last syllable communem common*.

IX. Finita r *words ending in r corripuntur are made short* ut *as*, Cæsar *a proper name*, per *by*, vir *a man*, uxor *a wife*, turtur *a turtle*.

Autem *but (these words) producuntur are made long* ; far *bread-corn*, Lar *an household god*, Nar *the river so called*, ver *the spring*, fur *a thief*, cur *why* ; quoque *also par equal to or like cum compositis with its compounds* : ut *as*, compar *a companion*, impar *unequal*, dispar *unlike*.

Græca etiam *also Greek words in er ending in er, quæ which illis among them desinunt end in ηρ in the long ē before r* ; ut *as*, aër *the air*, crater *a cup*, character *a mark or sign*, æther *the sky* ; præter *except pater a father et and mater a mother, quæ which apud Latinos with Latin authors habent have ultimam the last syllable brevem short*.

X. *Finita s words ending in s habent have pares terminationes the like terminations cum numero with the number vocalium of the vowels ; nempe namely, as, es, is, os, us, ys.*

I. *As finita words ending in as producuntur are made long . ut as, amas thou lovest, Musas the Muses, majestas majesty, bonitas goodness.*

Præter except nomina propria Græca Greek proper names, quorum genitivus singularis whose genitive case singular habet has penultimam the penultima brevem short : ut as, Arcas, Pallas, proper names, genitivo in the genitive case Arcados, Pallados.

Et and præter except accusativos plurales the accusative cases plural formatos formed Græco more in the Greek manner : ut as, heros a hero, heroas ; gigas a giant, gigantas.

II. *Finitas es words ending in es longa sunt are long : ut as, Anchises the father of Æneas, sedes thou sittest, doces thou teachest, patres fathers.*

Nomina in es nouns ending in es tertiæ inflectionis of the third declension, quæ which corripiunt make short penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing excipiuntur are excepted : ut as, miles a soldier, seges standing corn, dives rich. Sed but aries a ram, abies a fir-tree, paries the wall of a house, Ceres the goddess of corn, et and pes a foot, una cum compositis together with its compounds, ut as, bipes having two feet, tripes having three, longa sunt are long.

Quoque also es thou art, a from sum I am, una cum compositis together with its compounds, corripitur is made short : ut as, potes thou art able, ades thou art present, prodes thou profitest, obes thou hinderest : quibus to which penes in the power of potest may adjungi be added.

Item also neutra words of the neuter gender, et and nominativi plurales the nominative cases plural Græcorum of certain Greek words : ut as, hippomanes a raging humour in mares, cacoëthes an ill habit, Cyclopes giants so called, Naiades fairies of rivers and fountains.

III. *Finita is words ending in is brevia sunt are short : ut as, Paris a proper name, panis bread, tristis sorrowful, hilaris merry.*

I. *Excipe except obliquos casus plurales the oblique cases plural in is ending in is, qui which producuntur are made long : ut as, musis the dative and ablative case plural a of*

musa a muse or song, mensis, a of mensa a table, dominis to or by lords, templis temples, et and quis, pro for quibus whom.

2. *Item also producentia such words as make long penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing : ut as, Samnis a Samnite, Salamis an isle by Athens ; genitivo in the genitive case, Samnitis, Salaminis.*

3. *Et item and also omnia monosyllaba all monosyllables : ut as, vis strength, lis strife : præter except is he et and quis who nominativos in the nominative case, et and bis twice apud Ovidium in Ovid.*

Secunda persona singularis the second person singular præsentis activi of the present active quartæ conjugationis of the fourth conjugation producit is makes is long : ut as, audis you hear ; sic so possis you may be able, velis you may be willing, nolis you may be unwilling, malis you may prefer.

Secundæ personæ singulares the second persons singular futuri secundi activi indicativi of the second future indicative active, et and perfecti subjunctivi of the perfect subjunctive, faciunt make is commune is common : ut as, feceris you will have made, dederis you may have given.

(a.) *Porro moreover in his temporibus in these tenses secunda persona pluralis the second person plural habet has penultimam the penultima communem common : ut as, dixeritis you will have said, transieritis you will have passed.*

Gratis for nothing et and foris out of doors producent ultimam make the last syllable long.

IV. *Os finita words ending in os producentur are made long : ut as, honos honour, nepos a grandson, dominos lords, servos servants.*

Præter except compos he that hath ability or power in something, impos that is unable, or not having power, os ossis a bone, et and exos without bones.

Et and nomina propria proper names derivata derived a Græcis from Greek names in os : ut as, Delos an isle in the Ægean sea, Chaos a confused heap of things, Pallados the genitive case of Pallas Minerva, Phyllidos the genitive case of Phyllis, a proper name.

V. *Us finita words ending in us corripiuntur are made short : ut as, famulus a man-servant, regius royal, tempus time, amamus we love.*

Producentia words that make long penultimam the last syllable but one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case in-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

DELVE INTO FANTASY, MAGIC, MYTHOLOGY & FOLKLORE

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership gives
access to 797,885 ancient
and modern, fiction and
non-fiction books.

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies